Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants
香港會計師公會

MEMBERS' HANDBOOK

Update No. 116

(Issued 25 April 2012)

Handbook Improvements only

Document Reference and Title	***Instructions***	***Explanations***
VOLUME II		
Contents of Volume II	Insert the revised pages i - iii. Discard the replaced pages i - iii.	Revised contents pages

Amendments to the following Standards, Basis for Conclusions and Implementation Guidance were previously set out in the Appendix to the Standards as they were not yet effective. The Institute has taken this opportunity to incorporate the amendments applicable on 1 January 2012 in the relevant affected Standards, Basis for Conclusions and Implementation Guidance, for greater clarity.

HONG KONG ACCOUNTING STANDARDS (HKAS)

HKAS 1 (Revised) *Presentation of Financial Statements*	Replace the Standard, Basis for Conclusions and Implementation Guidance with revised Standard, Basis for Conclusions and Implementation Guidance	Amendments due to - *Improvements to HKFRSs 2010*
HKAS 12 *Income Taxes*	Replace the cover page and pages 2-4, 13, 23-26, 36 and 63-68 with revised cover page and pages 2-4, 13, 23-26, 36 and 63-68. Discard pages 69-73	Amendments due to - *Deferred Tax: Recovery of Underlying Assets* (Amendments to HKAS 12)
HKAS 34 *Interim Financial Reporting*	Replace the Standard and Basis for Conclusions with revised Standard and Basis for Conclusions	Amendments due to - *Improvements to HKFRSs 2010*

HONG KONG (IFRIC) INTERPRETATIONS (HK(IFRIC)-Int)

HK(IFRIC) - Int 13 *Customer Loyalty Programmes*	Replace the cover page and pages 1A, 5-7, 12 and 13-14 with revised cover page and pages 1A, 5-7, 12 and 13-14. Insert page 12A after page 12	Amendments due to - *Improvements to HKFRSs 2010*
HK(IFRIC) - Int 14 *HKAS 19 – The Limit on a Defined Benefit Asset, Minimum Funding Requirements and their Interaction*	Replace the Interpretation with revised Interpretation	Amendments due to - *Prepayments of a Minimum Funding Requirement* (Amendments to HK(IFRIC) – Int 14)

HONG KONG (SIC) INTERPRETATIONS (HK(SIC)-Int)

HK(SIC) - Int 21 *Income Taxes – Recovery of Revalued Non-Depreciable Assets*	Discard the Interpretation	Amendments due to - *Deferred Tax: Recovery of Underlying Assets* (Amendments to HKAS 12)

Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants
香港會計師公會

MEMBERS' HANDBOOK
CONTENTS OF VOLUME II

(Updated to April 2012)

Note: * *With effect from 24 May 2005, all Interpretations that are developed locally by the Institute are named Hong Kong Interpretations.*

HKAS 1 (Revised)
Revised ~~July 2011~~April 2012

Effective for annual periods
beginning on or after 1 January 2009*

Hong Kong Accounting Standard 1 (Revised)

Presentation of

Financial Statements

Hong Kong Institute of
Certified Public Accountants
香港會計師公會

CONTENTS

Hong Kong Accounting Standard 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* (HKAS 1) is set out in paragraphs 1–140 and Appendices A~~,~~ and D~~ and E~~. All the paragraphs have equal authority. HKAS 1 should be read in the context of its objective and the Basis for Conclusions, the *Preface to Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards* and the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting~~the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements~~.* HKAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors* provides a basis for selecting and applying accounting policies in the absence of explicit guidance.

This revised Standard was issued in December 2007 and revised in ~~July 2011~~April 2012. It supersedes HKAS 1, issued in 2004, as amended in 2005.

Introduction

IN1 Hong Kong Accounting Standard 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* (HKAS 1) replaces HKAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* (issued in 2004) as amended in 2005. HKAS 1 sets overall requirements for the presentation of financial statements, guidelines for their structure and minimum requirements for their content.

Reasons for revising HKAS 1

IN2 The objective of Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants (HKICPA) revising HKAS 1 is to maintain international convergence arising from the revision of IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB). The HKICPA supported the reasons for revising IAS 1 of the IASB.

The main objective of the IASB in revising IAS 1 was to aggregate information in the financial statements on the basis of shared characteristics. With this in mind, the IASB considered it useful to separate changes in equity (net assets) of an entity during a period arising from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners from other changes in equity. Consequently, the IASB decided that all owner changes in equity should be presented in the statement of changes in equity, separately from non-owner changes in equity.

IN3 In its review, the IASB also considered FASB Statement No. 130 *Reporting Comprehensive Income* (SFAS 130) issued in 1997. The requirements in IAS 1 regarding the presentation of the statement of comprehensive income are similar to those in SFAS 130; however, some differences remain and those are identified in paragraph BC106 of the Basis for Conclusions.

IN4 In addition, the IASB's intention in revising IAS 1 was to improve and reorder sections of IAS 1 to make it easier to read. The IASB's objective was not to reconsider all the requirements of IAS 1.

Main features of HKAS 1

IN5 HKAS 1 affects the presentation of owner changes in equity and of comprehensive income. It does not change the recognition, measurement or disclosure of specific transactions and other events required by other HKFRSs.

IN6 HKAS 1 requires an entity to present, in a statement of changes in equity, all owner changes in equity. All non-owner changes in equity (ie comprehensive income) are required to be presented in one statement of comprehensive income or in two statements (a separate income statement and a statement of comprehensive income). Components of comprehensive income are not permitted to be presented in the statement of changes in equity.

IN7 HKAS 1 requires an entity to present a statement of financial position as at the beginning of the earliest comparative period in a complete set of financial statements when the entity applies an accounting policy retrospectively or makes a retrospective restatement, as defined in HKAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*, or when the entity reclassifies items in the financial statements.

IN8 HKAS 1 requires an entity to disclose reclassification adjustments and income tax relating to each component of other comprehensive income. Reclassification adjustments are the amounts reclassified to profit or loss in the current period that were previously recognised in other comprehensive income.

IN9 HKAS 1 requires the presentation of dividends recognised as distributions to owners and related amounts per share in the statement of changes in equity or in the notes. Dividends are distributions to owners in their capacity as owners and the statement of changes in equity presents all owner changes in equity.

Changes from previous requirements

IN10 The main changes from the previous version of HKAS 1 are described below.

A complete set of financial statements

IN11 The previous version of HKAS 1 used the titles 'balance sheet' and 'cash flow statement' to describe two of the statements within a complete set of financial statements. HKAS 1 uses 'statement of financial position' and 'statement of cash flows' for those statements. The new titles reflect more closely the function of those statements, as described in the *Framework*[*] (see paragraphs BC14–BC21 of the Basis for Conclusions).

IN12 HKAS 1 requires an entity to disclose comparative information in respect of the previous period, ie to disclose as a minimum two of each of the statements and related notes. It introduces a requirement to include in a complete set of financial statements a statement of financial position as at the beginning of the earliest comparative period whenever the entity retrospectively applies an accounting policy or makes a retrospective restatement of items in its financial statements, or when it reclassifies items in its financial statements. The purpose is to provide information that is useful in analysing an entity's financial statements (see paragraphs BC31 and BC32 of the Basis for Conclusions).

Reporting owner changes in equity and comprehensive income

IN13 The previous version of HKAS 1 required the presentation of an income statement that included items of income and expense recognised in profit or loss. It required items of income and expense not recognised in profit or loss to be presented in the statement of changes in equity, together with owner changes in equity. It also labelled the statement of changes in equity comprising profit or loss, other items of income and expense and the effects of changes in accounting policies and correction of errors as 'statement of recognised income and expense'. HKAS 1 now requires:

(a) all changes in equity arising from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners (ie owner changes in equity) to be presented separately from non-owner changes in equity. An entity is not permitted to present components of comprehensive income (ie non-owner changes in equity) in the statement of changes in equity. The purpose is to provide better information by aggregating items with shared characteristics and separating items with different characteristics (see paragraphs BC37 and BC38 of the Basis for Conclusions).

(b) income and expenses to be presented in one statement (a statement of comprehensive income) or in two statements (a separate income statement and a statement of comprehensive income), separately from owner changes in equity (see paragraphs BC49–BC54 of the Basis for Conclusions).

(c) components of other comprehensive income to be displayed in the statement of comprehensive income.

(d) total comprehensive income to be presented in the financial statements.

[*] In October 2010 the HKICPA replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting.*

Other comprehensive income—reclassification adjustments and related tax effects

IN14 HKAS 1 requires an entity to disclose income tax relating to each component of other comprehensive income. The previous version of HKAS 1 did not include such a requirement. The purpose is to provide users with tax information relating to these components because the components often have tax rates different from those applied to profit or loss (see paragraphs BC65–BC68 of the Basis for Conclusions).

IN15 HKAS 1 also requires an entity to disclose reclassification adjustments relating to components of other comprehensive income. Reclassification adjustments are amounts reclassified to profit or loss in the current period that were recognised in other comprehensive income in previous periods. The purpose is to provide users with information to assess the effect of such reclassifications on profit or loss (see paragraphs BC69–BC73 of the Basis for Conclusions).

Presentation of dividends

IN16 The previous version of HKAS 1 permitted disclosure of the amount of dividends recognised as distributions to equity holders (now referred to as 'owners') and the related amount per share in the income statement, in the statement of changes in equity or in the notes. HKAS 1 requires dividends recognised as distributions to owners and related amounts per share to be presented in the statement of changes in equity or in the notes. The presentation of such disclosures in the statement of comprehensive income is not permitted (see paragraph BC75 of the Basis for Conclusions). The purpose is to ensure that owner changes in equity (in this case, distributions to owners in the form of dividends) are presented separately from non-owner changes in equity (presented in the statement of comprehensive income).

Hong Kong Accounting Standard 1
Presentation of Financial Statements

Objective

1 This Standard prescribes the basis for presentation of general purpose financial statements to ensure comparability both with the entity's financial statements of previous periods and with the financial statements of other entities. It sets out overall requirements for the presentation of financial statements, guidelines for their structure and minimum requirements for their content.

Scope

2 An entity shall apply this Standard in preparing and presenting general purpose financial statements in accordance with Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards (HKFRSs).

3 Other HKFRSs set out the recognition, measurement and disclosure requirements for specific transactions and other events.

4 This Standard does not apply to the structure and content of condensed interim financial statements prepared in accordance with HKAS 34 *Interim Financial Reporting*. However, paragraphs 15–35 apply to such financial statements. This Standard applies equally to all entities, including those that present consolidated financial statements and those that present separate financial statements as defined in HKAS 27 *Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements*.

5 This Standard uses terminology that is suitable for profit-oriented entities, including public sector business entities. If entities with not-for-profit activities in the private sector or the public sector apply this Standard, they may need to amend the descriptions used for particular line items in the financial statements and for the financial statements themselves.

6 Similarly, entities that do not have equity as defined in HKAS 32 *Financial Instruments: Presentation* (eg some mutual funds) and entities whose share capital is not equity (eg some co-operative entities) may need to adapt the financial statement presentation of members' or unitholders' interests.

Definitions

7 The following terms are used in this Standard with the meanings specified:

General purpose financial statements **(referred to as 'financial statements') are those intended to meet the needs of users who are not in a position to require an entity to prepare reports tailored to their particular information needs.**

Impracticable **Applying a requirement is impracticable when the entity cannot apply it after making every reasonable effort to do so.**

Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards (HKFRSs) **are Standards and Interpretations issued by the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants (HKICPA). They comprise:**

(a) Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards;

(b) Hong Kong Accounting Standards; and

(c) Interpretations.

Material **Omissions or misstatements of items are material if they could, individually or collectively, influence the economic decisions that users make on the basis of the financial statements. Materiality depends on the size and nature of the omission or misstatement judged in the surrounding circumstances. The size or nature of the item, or a combination of both, could be the determining factor.**

Assessing whether an omission or misstatement could influence economic decisions of users, and so be material, requires consideration of the characteristics of those users. The *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* states in paragraph 25* that 'users are assumed to have a reasonable knowledge of business and economic activities and accounting and a willingness to study the information with reasonable diligence.' Therefore, the assessment needs to take into account how users with such attributes could reasonably be expected to be influenced in making economic decisions.

Notes **contain information in addition to that presented in the statement of financial position, statement of comprehensive income, separate income statement (if presented), statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows. Notes provide narrative descriptions or disaggregations of items presented in those statements and information about items that do not qualify for recognition in those statements.**

Other comprehensive income **comprises items of income and expense (including reclassification adjustments) that are not recognised in profit or loss as required or permitted by other HKFRSs.**

The components of other comprehensive income include:

(a) changes in revaluation surplus (see HKAS 16 *Property, Plant and Equipment* and HKAS 38 *Intangible Assets*);

(b) actuarial gains and losses on defined benefit plans recognised in accordance with paragraph 93A of HKAS 19 *Employee Benefits*;

(c) gains and losses arising from translating the financial statements of a foreign operation (see HKAS 21 *The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates*);

(d) gains and losses on remeasuring available-for-sale financial assets (see HKAS 39 *Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement*);

(e) the effective portion of gains and losses on hedging instruments in a cash flow hedge (see HKAS 39).

Owners **are holders of instruments classified as equity.**

Profit or loss **is the total of income less expenses, excluding the components of other comprehensive income.**

Reclassification adjustments **are amounts reclassified to profit or loss in the current period that were recognised in other comprehensive income in the current or previous periods.**

* In October 2010 the HKICPA replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*. Paragraph 25 was superseded by Chapter 3 of the *Conceptual Framework*.

Total comprehensive income **is the change in equity during a period resulting from transactions and other events, other than those changes resulting from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners.**

Total comprehensive income comprises all components of 'profit or loss' and of 'other comprehensive income'.

8 Although this Standard uses the terms 'other comprehensive income', 'profit or loss' and 'total comprehensive income', an entity may use other terms to describe the totals as long as the meaning is clear. For example, an entity may use the term 'net income' to describe profit or loss.

8A The following terms are described in HKAS 32 *Financial Instruments: Presentation* and are used in this Standard with the meaning specified in HKAS 32:

(a) puttable financial instrument classified as an equity instrument (described in paragraphs 16A and 16B of HKAS 32)

(b) an instrument that imposes on the entity an obligation to deliver to another party a prorata share of the net assets of the entity only on liquidation and is classified as an equity instrument (described in paragraphs 16C and 16D of HKAS 32).

Financial statements

Purpose of financial statements

9 Financial statements are a structured representation of the financial position and financial performance of an entity. The objective of financial statements is to provide information about the financial position, financial performance and cash flows of an entity that is useful to a wide range of users in making economic decisions. Financial statements also show the results of the management's stewardship of the resources entrusted to it. To meet this objective, financial statements provide information about an entity's:

(a) assets;

(b) liabilities;

(c) equity;

(d) income and expenses, including gains and losses;

(e) contributions by and distributions to owners in their capacity as owners; and

(f) cash flows.

This information, along with other information in the notes, assists users of financial statements in predicting the entity's future cash flows and, in particular, their timing and certainty.

Complete set of financial statements

10 A complete set of financial statements comprises:

(a) a statement of financial position as at the end of the period;

(b) a statement of comprehensive income for the period;

(c) a statement of changes in equity for the period;

(d) a statement of cash flows for the period;

(e) notes, comprising a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information; and

(f) a statement of financial position as at the beginning of the earliest comparative period when an entity applies an accounting policy retrospectively or makes a retrospective restatement of items in its financial statements, or when it reclassifies items in its financial statements.

An entity may use titles for the statements other than those used in this Standard.

11 An entity shall present with equal prominence all of the financial statements in a complete set of financial statements.

12 As permitted by paragraph 81, an entity may present the components of profit or loss either as part of a single statement of comprehensive income or in a separate income statement. When an income statement is presented it is part of a complete set of financial statements and shall be displayed immediately before the statement of comprehensive income.

13 Many entities present, outside the financial statements, a financial review by management that describes and explains the main features of the entity's financial performance and financial position, and the principal uncertainties it faces. Such a report may include a review of:

(a) the main factors and influences determining financial performance, including changes in the environment in which the entity operates, the entity's response to those changes and their effect, and the entity's policy for investment to maintain and enhance financial performance, including its dividend policy;

(b) the entity's sources of funding and its targeted ratio of liabilities to equity; and

(c) the entity's resources not recognised in the statement of financial position in accordance with HKFRSs.

14 Many entities also present, outside the financial statements, reports and statements such as environmental reports and value added statements, particularly in industries in which environmental factors are significant and when employees are regarded as an important user group. Reports and statements presented outside financial statements are outside the scope of HKFRSs.

General features

True and fair view and compliance with HKFRSs

15 Financial statements shall present a true and fair view of the financial position, financial performance and cash flows of an entity. True and fair view requires the faithful representation of the effects of transactions, other events and conditions in accordance with the definitions and recognition criteria for assets, liabilities, income and expenses set out in the *Framework*.[*] The application of HKFRSs, with additional disclosure when necessary, is presumed to result in financial statements that achieve a true and fair view.

[*] Paragraphs 15-24 contain references to the objective of financial statements set out in the *Framework [for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements]*. In October 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, which replaced the objective of financial statements with the objective of general purpose financial reporting: see Chapter 1 of the *Conceptual Framework*.

16 **An entity whose financial statements comply with HKFRSs shall make an explicit and unreserved statement of such compliance in the notes. An entity shall not describe financial statements as complying with HKFRSs unless they comply with all the requirements of HKFRSs.**

17 In virtually all circumstances, an entity achieves a true and fair view by compliance with applicable HKFRSs. A true and fair view also requires an entity:

(a) to select and apply accounting policies in accordance with HKAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*. HKAS 8 sets out a hierarchy of authoritative guidance that management considers in the absence of an HKFRS that specifically applies to an item.

(b) to present information, including accounting policies, in a manner that provides relevant, reliable, comparable and understandable information.

(c) to provide additional disclosures when compliance with the specific requirements in HKFRSs is insufficient to enable users to understand the impact of particular transactions, other events and conditions on the entity's financial position and financial performance.

18 **An entity cannot rectify inappropriate accounting policies either by disclosure of the accounting policies used or by notes or explanatory material.**

19 **In the extremely rare circumstances in which management concludes that compliance with a requirement in an HKFRS would be so misleading that it would conflict with the objective of financial statements set out in the *Framework*, the entity shall depart from that requirement in the manner set out in paragraph 20 if the relevant regulatory framework requires, or otherwise does not prohibit, such a departure.**

20 **When an entity departs from a requirement of an HKFRS in accordance with paragraph 19, it shall disclose:**

(a) that management has concluded that the financial statements present fairly the entity's financial position, financial performance and cash flows;

(b) that it has complied with applicable HKFRSs, except that it has departed from a particular requirement to achieve a true and fair view;

(c) the title of the HKFRS from which the entity has departed, the nature of the departure, including the treatment that the HKFRS would require, the reason why that treatment would be so misleading in the circumstances that it would conflict with the objective of financial statements set out in the *Framework*, and the treatment adopted; and

(d) for each period presented, the financial effect of the departure on each item in the financial statements that would have been reported in complying with the requirement.

21 **When an entity has departed from a requirement of an HKFRS in a prior period, and that departure affects the amounts recognised in the financial statements for the current period, it shall make the disclosures set out in paragraph 20(c) and (d).**

22 Paragraph 21 applies, for example, when an entity departed in a prior period from a requirement in an HKFRS for the measurement of assets or liabilities and that departure affects the measurement of changes in assets and liabilities recognised in the current period's financial statements.

23 In the extremely rare circumstances in which management concludes that compliance with a requirement in an HKFRS would be so misleading that it would conflict with the objective of financial statements set out in the *Framework*, but the relevant regulatory framework prohibits departure from the requirement, the entity shall, to the maximum extent possible, reduce the perceived misleading aspects of compliance by disclosing:

(a) the title of the HKFRS in question, the nature of the requirement, and the reason why management has concluded that complying with that requirement is so misleading in the circumstances that it conflicts with the objective of financial statements set out in the *Framework*; and

(b) for each period presented, the adjustments to each item in the financial statements that management has concluded would be necessary to achieve a true and fair view.

24 For the purpose of paragraphs 19–23, an item of information would conflict with the objective of financial statements when it does not represent faithfully the transactions, other events and conditions that it either purports to represent or could reasonably be expected to represent and, consequently, it would be likely to influence economic decisions made by users of financial statements. When assessing whether complying with a specific requirement in an HKFRS would be so misleading that it would conflict with the objective of financial statements set out in the *Framework*, management considers:

(a) why the objective of financial statements is not achieved in the particular circumstances; and

(b) how the entity's circumstances differ from those of other entities that comply with the requirement. If other entities in similar circumstances comply with the requirement, there is a rebuttable presumption that the entity's compliance with the requirement would not be so misleading that it would conflict with the objective of financial statements set out in the *Framework*.

Going concern

25 When preparing financial statements, management shall make an assessment of an entity's ability to continue as a going concern. An entity shall prepare financial statements on a going concern basis unless management either intends to liquidate the entity or to cease trading, or has no realistic alternative but to do so. When management is aware, in making its assessment, of material uncertainties related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt upon the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, the entity shall disclose those uncertainties. When an entity does not prepare financial statements on a going concern basis, it shall disclose that fact, together with the basis on which it prepared the financial statements and the reason why the entity is not regarded as a going concern.

26 In assessing whether the going concern assumption is appropriate, management takes into account all available information about the future, which is at least, but is not limited to, twelve months from the end of the reporting period. The degree of consideration depends on the facts in each case. When an entity has a history of profitable operations and ready access to financial resources, the entity may reach a conclusion that the going concern basis of accounting is appropriate without detailed analysis. In other cases, management may need to consider a wide range of factors relating to current and expected profitability, debt repayment schedules and potential sources of replacement financing before it can satisfy itself that the going concern basis is appropriate.

Accrual basis of accounting

27 An entity shall prepare its financial statements, except for cash flow information, using the accrual basis of accounting.

28 When the accrual basis of accounting is used, an entity recognises items as assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses (the elements of financial statements) when they satisfy the definitions and recognition criteria for those elements in the *Framework*.[*]

Materiality and aggregation

29 An entity shall present separately each material class of similar items. An entity shall present separately items of a dissimilar nature or function unless they are immaterial.

30 Financial statements result from processing large numbers of transactions or other events that are aggregated into classes according to their nature or function. The final stage in the process of aggregation and classification is the presentation of condensed and classified data, which form line items in the financial statements. If a line item is not individually material, it is aggregated with other items either in those statements or in the notes. An item that is not sufficiently material to warrant separate presentation in those statements may warrant separate presentation in the notes.

31 An entity need not provide a specific disclosure required by an HKFRS if the information is not material.

Offsetting

32 An entity shall not offset assets and liabilities or income and expenses, unless required or permitted by an HKFRS.

33 An entity reports separately both assets and liabilities, and income and expenses. Offsetting in the statements of comprehensive income or financial position or in the separate income statement (if presented), except when offsetting reflects the substance of the transaction or other event, detracts from the ability of users both to understand the transactions, other events and conditions that have occurred and to assess the entity's future cash flows. Measuring assets net of valuation allowances—for example, obsolescence allowances on inventories and doubtful debts allowances on receivables—is not offsetting.

34 HKAS 18 *Revenue* defines revenue and requires an entity to measure it at the fair value of the consideration received or receivable, taking into account the amount of any trade discounts and volume rebates the entity allows. An entity undertakes, in the course of its ordinary activities, other transactions that do not generate revenue but are incidental to the main revenue-generating activities. An entity presents the results of such transactions, when this presentation reflects the substance of the transaction or other event, by netting any income with related expenses arising on the same transaction. For example:

(a) an entity presents gains and losses on the disposal of non-current assets, including investments and operating assets, by deducting from the proceeds on disposal the carrying amount of the asset and related selling expenses; and

(b) an entity may net expenditure related to a provision that is recognised in accordance with HKAS 37 *Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets* and reimbursed under a contractual arrangement with a third party (for example, a supplier's warranty agreement) against the related reimbursement.

35 In addition, an entity presents on a net basis gains and losses arising from a group of similar transactions, for example, foreign exchange gains and losses or gains and losses arising on financial instruments held for trading. However, an entity presents such gains and losses separately if they are material.

[*] replaced by the *Conceptual Framework* in October 2010.

Frequency of reporting

36 An entity shall present a complete set of financial statements (including comparative information) at least annually. When an entity changes the end of its reporting period and presents financial statements for a period longer or shorter than one year, an entity shall disclose, in addition to the period covered by the financial statements:

(a) the reason for using a longer or shorter period, and

(b) the fact that amounts presented in the financial statements are not entirely comparable.

37. Normally, an entity consistently prepares financial statements for a one-year period. However, for practical reasons, some entities prefer to report, for example, for a 52-week period. This Standard does not preclude this practice.

Comparative information

38 Except when HKFRSs permit or require otherwise, an entity shall disclose comparative information in respect of the previous period for all amounts reported in the current period's financial statements. An entity shall include comparative information for narrative and descriptive information when it is relevant to an understanding of the current period's financial statements.

39 An entity disclosing comparative information shall present, as a minimum, two statements of financial position, two of each of the other statements, and related notes. When an entity applies an accounting policy retrospectively or makes a retrospective restatement of items in its financial statements or when it reclassifies items in its financial statements, it shall present, as a minimum, three statements of financial position, two of each of the other statements, and related notes. An entity presents statements of financial position as at:

(a) the end of the current period,

(b) the end of the previous period (which is the same as the beginning of the current period), and

(c) the beginning of the earliest comparative period.

40 In some cases, narrative information provided in the financial statements for the previous period(s) continues to be relevant in the current period. For example, an entity discloses in the current period details of a legal dispute whose outcome was uncertain at the end of the immediately preceding reporting period and that is yet to be resolved. Users benefit from information that the uncertainty existed at the end of the immediately preceding reporting period, and about the steps that have been taken during the period to resolve the uncertainty.

41 When the entity changes the presentation or classification of items in its financial statements, the entity shall reclassify comparative amounts unless reclassification is impracticable. When the entity reclassifies comparative amounts, the entity shall disclose:

(a) the nature of the reclassification;

(b) the amount of each item or class of items that is reclassified; and

(c) the reason for the reclassification.

42 When it is impracticable to reclassify comparative amounts, an entity shall disclose:

(a) the reason for not reclassifying the amounts, and

(b) the nature of the adjustments that would have been made if the amounts had been reclassified.

43 Enhancing the inter-period comparability of information assists users in making economic decisions, especially by allowing the assessment of trends in financial information for predictive purposes. In some circumstances, it is impracticable to reclassify comparative information for a particular prior period to achieve comparability with the current period. For example, an entity may not have collected data in the prior period(s) in a way that allows reclassification, and it may be impracticable to recreate the information.

44 HKAS 8 sets out the adjustments to comparative information required when an entity changes an accounting policy or corrects an error.

Consistency of presentation

45 An entity shall retain the presentation and classification of items in the financial statements from one period to the next unless:

(a) it is apparent, following a significant change in the nature of the entity's operations or a review of its financial statements, that another presentation or classification would be more appropriate having regard to the criteria for the selection and application of accounting policies in HKAS 8; or

(b) an HKFRS requires a change in presentation.

46. For example, a significant acquisition or disposal, or a review of the presentation of the financial statements, might suggest that the financial statements need to be presented differently. An entity changes the presentation of its financial statements only if the changed presentation provides information that is reliable and more relevant to users of the financial statements and the revised structure is likely to continue, so that comparability is not impaired. When making such changes in presentation, an entity reclassifies its comparative information in accordance with paragraphs 41 and 42.

Structure and content

Introduction

47 This Standard requires particular disclosures in the statement of financial position or of comprehensive income, in the separate income statement (if presented), or in the statement of changes in equity and requires disclosure of other line items either in those statements or in the notes. HKAS 7 *Statement of Cash Flows* sets out requirements for the presentation of cash flow information.

48 This Standard sometimes uses the term 'disclosure' in a broad sense, encompassing items presented in the financial statements. Disclosures are also required by other HKFRSs. Unless specified to the contrary elsewhere in this Standard or in another HKFRS, such disclosures may be made in the financial statements.

Identification of the financial statements

49 An entity shall clearly identify the financial statements and distinguish them from other information in the same published document.

50 HKFRSs apply only to financial statements, and not necessarily to other information presented in an annual report, a regulatory filing, or another document. Therefore, it is important that users can distinguish information that is prepared using HKFRSs from other information that may be useful to users but is not the subject of those requirements.

51 An entity shall clearly identify each financial statement and the notes. In addition, an entity shall display the following information prominently, and repeat it when necessary for the information presented to be understandable:

(a) the name of the reporting entity or other means of identification, and any change in that information from the end of the preceding reporting period;

(b) whether the financial statements are of an individual entity or a group of entities;

(c) the date of the end of the reporting period or the period covered by the set of financial statements or notes;

(d) the presentation currency, as defined in HKAS 21; and

(e) the level of rounding used in presenting amounts in the financial statements.

52 An entity meets the requirements in paragraph 51 by presenting appropriate headings for pages, statements, notes, columns and the like. Judgement is required in determining the best way of presenting such information. For example, when an entity presents the financial statements electronically, separate pages are not always used; an entity then presents the above items to ensure that the information included in the financial statements can be understood.

53 An entity often makes financial statements more understandable by presenting information in thousands or millions of units of the presentation currency. This is acceptable as long as the entity discloses the level of rounding and does not omit material information.

Statement of financial position

Information to be presented in the statement of financial position

54 As a minimum, the statement of financial position shall include line items that present the following amounts:

(a) property, plant and equipment;

(b) investment property;

(c) intangible assets;

(d) financial assets (excluding amounts shown under (e), (h) and (i));

(e) investments accounted for using the equity method;

(f) biological assets;

(g) inventories;

(h) trade and other receivables;

(i) cash and cash equivalents;

- **(j) the total of assets classified as held for sale and assets included in disposal groups classified as held for sale in accordance with HKFRS 5 *Non-current Assets Held for Sale and Discontinued Operations*;**
- **(k) trade and other payables;**
- **(l) provisions;**
- **(m) financial liabilities (excluding amounts shown under (k) and (l));**
- **(n) liabilities and assets for current tax, as defined in HKAS 12 *Income Taxes*;**
- **(o) deferred tax liabilities and deferred tax assets, as defined in HKAS 12;**
- **(p) liabilities included in disposal groups classified as held for sale in accordance with HKFRS 5;**
- **(q) non-controlling interests, presented within equity; and**
- **(r) issued capital and reserves attributable to owners of the parent.**

55 An entity shall present additional line items, headings and subtotals in the statement of financial position when such presentation is relevant to an understanding of the entity's financial position.

56 When an entity presents current and non-current assets, and current and non-current liabilities, as separate classifications in its statement of financial position, it shall not classify deferred tax assets (liabilities) as current assets (liabilities).

57 This Standard does not prescribe the order or format in which an entity presents items. Paragraph 54 simply lists items that are sufficiently different in nature or function to warrant separate presentation in the statement of financial position. In addition:

- (a) line items are included when the size, nature or function of an item or aggregation of similar items is such that separate presentation is relevant to an understanding of the entity's financial position; and
- (b) the descriptions used and the ordering of items or aggregation of similar items may be amended according to the nature of the entity and its transactions, to provide information that is relevant to an understanding of the entity's financial position. For example, a financial institution may amend the above descriptions to provide information that is relevant to the operations of a financial institution.

58 An entity makes the judgement about whether to present additional items separately on the basis of an assessment of:

- (a) the nature and liquidity of assets;
- (b) the function of assets within the entity; and
- (c) the amounts, nature and timing of liabilities.

59 The use of different measurement bases for different classes of assets suggests that their nature or function differs and, therefore, that an entity presents them as separate line items. For example, different classes of property, plant and equipment can be carried at cost or at revalued amounts in accordance with HKAS 16.

Current/non-current distinction

60 An entity shall present current and non-current assets, and current and non-current liabilities, as separate classifications in its statement of financial position in accordance with paragraphs 66–76 except when a presentation based on liquidity provides information that is reliable and more relevant. When that exception applies, an entity shall present all assets and liabilities in order of liquidity.

61 Whichever method of presentation is adopted, an entity shall disclose the amount expected to be recovered or settled after more than twelve months for each asset and liability line item that combines amounts expected to be recovered or settled:

(a) no more than twelve months after the reporting period, and

(b) more than twelve months after the reporting period.

62 When an entity supplies goods or services within a clearly identifiable operating cycle, separate classification of current and non-current assets and liabilities in the statement of financial position provides useful information by distinguishing the net assets that are continuously circulating as working capital from those used in the entity's long-term operations. It also highlights assets that are expected to be realized within the current operating cycle, and liabilities that are due for settlement within the same period.

63 For some entities, such as financial institutions, a presentation of assets and liabilities in increasing or decreasing order of liquidity provides information that is reliable and more relevant than a current/ non-current presentation because the entity does not supply goods or services within a clearly identifiable operating cycle.

64 In applying paragraph 60, an entity is permitted to present some of its assets and liabilities using a current/non-current classification and others in order of liquidity when this provides information that is reliable and more relevant. The need for a mixed basis of presentation might arise when an entity has diverse operations.

65 Information about expected dates of realisation of assets and liabilities is useful in assessing the liquidity and solvency of an entity. HKFRS 7 *Financial Instruments: Disclosures* requires disclosure of the maturity dates of financial assets and financial liabilities. Financial assets include trade and other receivables, and financial liabilities include trade and other payables. Information on the expected date of recovery of non-monetary assets such as inventories and expected date of settlement for liabilities such as provisions is also useful, whether assets and liabilities are classified as current or as non-current. For example, an entity discloses the amount of inventories that are expected to be recovered more than twelve months after the reporting period.

Current assets

66 An entity shall classify an asset as current when:

(a) it expects to realise the asset, or intends to sell or consume it, in its normal operating cycle;

(b) it holds the asset primarily for the purpose of trading;

(c) it expects to realise the asset within twelve months after the reporting period; or

(d) the asset is cash or a cash equivalent (as defined in HKAS 7) unless the asset is restricted from being exchanged or used to settle a liability for at least twelve months after the reporting period.

An entity shall classify all other assets as non-current.

67 This Standard uses the term ‘non-current’ to include tangible, intangible and financial assets of a long-term nature. It does not prohibit the use of alternative descriptions as long as the meaning is clear.

68 The operating cycle of an entity is the time between the acquisition of assets for processing and their realisation in cash or cash equivalents. When the entity’s normal operating cycle is not clearly identifiable, it is assumed to be twelve months. Current assets include assets (such as inventories and trade receivables) that are sold, consumed or realised as part of the normal operating cycle even when they are not expected to be realised within twelve months after the reporting period. Current assets also include assets held primarily for the purpose of trading (examples include some financial assets classified as held for trading in accordance with HKAS 39) and the current portion of non-current financial assets.

Current liabilities

69 An entity shall classify a liability as current when:

(a) it expects to settle the liability in its normal operating cycle;

(b) it holds the liability primarily for the purpose of trading;

(c) the liability is due to be settled within twelve months after the reporting period; or

(d) it does not have an unconditional right to defer settlement of the liability for at least twelve months after the reporting period (see paragraph 73). Terms of a liability that could, at the option of the counterparty, result in its settlement by the issue of equity instruments do not affect its classification.

An entity shall classify all other liabilities as non-current.

70 Some current liabilities, such as trade payables and some accruals for employee and other operating costs, are part of the working capital used in the entity’s normal operating cycle. An entity classifies such operating items as current liabilities even if they are due to be settled more than twelve months after the reporting period. The same normal operating cycle applies to the classification of an entity’s assets and liabilities. When the entity’s normal operating cycle is not clearly identifiable, it is assumed to be twelve months.

71 Other current liabilities are not settled as part of the normal operating cycle, but are due for settlement within twelve months after the reporting period or held primarily for the purpose of trading. Examples are some financial liabilities classified as held for trading in accordance with HKAS 39, bank overdrafts, and the current portion of non-current financial liabilities, dividends payable, income taxes and other non-trade payables. Financial liabilities that provide financing on a long-term basis (ie are not part of the working capital used in the entity’s normal operating cycle) and are not due for settlement within twelve months after the reporting period are non-current liabilities, subject to paragraphs 74 and 75.

72 An entity classifies its financial liabilities as current when they are due to be settled within twelve months after the reporting period, even if:

(a) the original term was for a period longer than twelve months, and

(b) an agreement to refinance, or to reschedule payments, on a long-term basis is completed after the reporting period and before the financial statements are authorised for issue.

73 If an entity expects, and has the discretion, to refinance or roll over an obligation for at least twelve months after the reporting period under an existing loan facility, it classifies the obligation as non-current, even if it would otherwise be due within a shorter period. However, when refinancing or rolling over the obligation is not at the discretion of the entity (for example, there is no arrangement for refinancing), the entity does not consider the potential to refinance the obligation and classifies the obligation as current.

74 When an entity breaches a provision of a long-term loan arrangement on or before the end of the reporting period with the effect that the liability becomes payable on demand, it classifies the liability as current, even if the lender agreed, after the reporting period and before the authorization of the financial statements for issue, not to demand payment as a consequence of the breach. An entity classifies the liability as current because, at the end of the reporting period, it does not have an unconditional right to defer its settlement for at least twelve months after that date.

75 However, an entity classifies the liability as non-current if the lender agreed by the end of the reporting period to provide a period of grace ending at least twelve months after the reporting period, within which the entity can rectify the breach and during which the lender cannot demand immediate repayment.

76 In respect of loans classified as current liabilities, if the following events occur between the end of the reporting period and the date the financial statements are authorised for issue, those events are disclosed as non-adjusting events in accordance with HKAS 10 *Events after the Reporting Period*:

(a) refinancing on a long-term basis;

(b) rectification of a breach of a long-term loan arrangement; and

(c) the granting by the lender of a period of grace to rectify a breach of a long-term loan arrangement ending at least twelve months after the reporting period.

Information to be presented either in the statement of financial position or in the notes

77 An entity shall disclose, either in the statement of financial position or in the notes, further subclassifications of the line items presented, classified in a manner appropriate to the entity's operations.

78 The detail provided in subclassifications depends on the requirements of HKFRSs and on the size, nature and function of the amounts involved. An entity also uses the factors set out in paragraph 58 to decide the basis of subclassification. The disclosures vary for each item, for example:

(a) items of property, plant and equipment are disaggregated into classes in accordance with HKAS 16;

(b) receivables are disaggregated into amounts receivable from trade customers, receivables from related parties, prepayments and other amounts;

(c) inventories are disaggregated, in accordance with HKAS 2 *Inventories*, into classifications such as merchandise, production supplies, materials, work in progress and finished goods;

(d) provisions are disaggregated into provisions for employee benefits and other items; and

(e) equity capital and reserves are disaggregated into various classes, such as paid-in capital, share premium and reserves.

79 An entity shall disclose the following, either in the statement of financial position or the statement of changes in equity, or in the notes:

(a) for each class of share capital:

(i) the number of shares authorised;

(ii) the number of shares issued and fully paid, and issued but not fully paid;

(iii) par value per share, or that the shares have no par value;

(iv) a reconciliation of the number of shares outstanding at the beginning and at the end of the period;

(v) the rights, preferences and restrictions attaching to that class including restrictions on the distribution of dividends and the repayment of capital;

(vi) shares in the entity held by the entity or by its subsidiaries or associates; and

(vii) shares reserved for issue under options and contracts for the sale of shares, including terms and amounts; and

(b) a description of the nature and purpose of each reserve within equity.

80 An entity without share capital, such as a partnership or trust, shall disclose information equivalent to that required by paragraph 79(a), showing changes during the period in each category of equity interest, and the rights, preferences and restrictions attaching to each category of equity interest.

80A If an entity has reclassified

(a) a puttable financial instrument classified as an equity instrument, or

(b) an instrument that imposes on the entity an obligation to deliver to another party a pro rata share of the net assets of the entity only on liquidation and is classified as an equity instrument

Between financial liabilities and equity, it shall disclose the amount reclassified into and out of each category (financial liabilities or equity), and the timing and reason for that reclassification.

Statement of comprehensive income

81 An entity shall present all items of income and expense recognised in a period:

(a) in a single statement of comprehensive income, or

(b) in two statements: a statement displaying components of profit or loss (separate income statement) and a second statement beginning with profit or loss and displaying components of other comprehensive income (statement of comprehensive income).

Information to be presented in the statement of comprehensive income

82 **As a minimum, the statement of comprehensive income shall include line items that present the following amounts for the period:**

- **(a) revenue;**
- **(b) finance costs;**
- **(c) share of the profit or loss of associates and joint ventures accounted for using the equity method;**
- **(d) tax expense;**
- **(e) a single amount comprising the total of:**
  - **(i) the post-tax profit or loss of discontinued operations and**
  - **(ii) the post-tax gain or loss recognised on the measurement to fair value less costs to sell or on the disposal of the assets or disposal group(s) constituting the discontinued operation;**
- **(f) profit or loss;**
- **(g) each component of other comprehensive income classified by nature (excluding amounts in (h));**
- **(h) share of the other comprehensive income of associates and joint ventures accounted for using the equity method; and**
- **(i) total comprehensive income.**

83 **An entity shall disclose the following items in the statement of comprehensive income as allocations for the period:**

- **(a) profit or loss for the period attributable to:**
  - **(i) non-controlling interests, and**
  - **(ii) owners of the parent.**
- **(b) total comprehensive income for the period attributable to:**
  - **(i) non-controlling interests, and**
  - **(ii) owners of the parent.**

84 **An entity may present in a separate income statement (see paragraph 81) the line items in paragraph 82(a)–(f) and the disclosures in paragraph 83(a).**

85 **An entity shall present additional line items, headings and subtotals in the statement of comprehensive income and the separate income statement (if presented), when such presentation is relevant to an understanding of the entity's financial performance.**

86 Because the effects of an entity's various activities, transactions and other events differ in frequency, potential for gain or loss and predictability, disclosing the components of financial performance assists users in understanding the financial performance achieved and in making projections of future financial performance. An entity includes additional line items in the statement of comprehensive income and in the separate income statement (if presented), and it amends the descriptions used and the ordering of items when this is necessary to explain the elements of financial performance. An entity considers factors including materiality and the nature and function of the items of income and expense. For example, a financial institution may amend the descriptions to provide information that is relevant to the operations of a financial institution. An entity does not offset income and expense items unless the criteria in paragraph 32 are met.

87 An entity shall not present any items of income or expense as extraordinary items, in the statement of comprehensive income or the separate income statement (if presented), or in the notes.

Profit or loss for the period

88 An entity shall recognise all items of income and expense in a period in profit or loss unless an HKFRS requires or permits otherwise.

89 Some HKFRSs specify circumstances when an entity recognises particular items outside profit or loss in the current period. HKAS 8 specifies two such circumstances: the correction of errors and the effect of changes in accounting policies. Other HKFRSs require or permit components of other comprehensive income that meet the *Framework*'s[*] definition of income or expense to be excluded from profit or loss (see paragraph 7).

Other comprehensive income for the period

90 An entity shall disclose the amount of income tax relating to each component of other comprehensive income, including reclassification adjustments, either in the statement of comprehensive income or in the notes.

91 An entity may present components of other comprehensive income either:

(a) net of related tax effects, or

(b) before related tax effects with one amount shown for the aggregate amount of income tax relating to those components.

92 An entity shall disclose reclassification adjustments relating to components of other comprehensive income.

93 Other HKFRSs specify whether and when amounts previously recognised in other comprehensive income are reclassified to profit or loss. Such reclassifications are referred to in this Standard as reclassification adjustments. A reclassification adjustment is included with the related component of other comprehensive income in the period that the adjustment is reclassified to profit or loss. For example, gains realised on the disposal of available-for-sale financial assets are included in profit or loss of the current period. These amounts may have been recognised in other comprehensive income as unrealised gains in the current or previous periods. Those unrealised gains must be deducted from other comprehensive income in the period in which the realised gains are reclassified to profit or loss to avoid including them in total comprehensive income twice.

[*] In October 2010 the HKICPA replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.

94 An entity may present reclassification adjustments in the statement of comprehensive income or in the notes. An entity presenting reclassification adjustments in the notes presents the components of other comprehensive income after any related reclassification adjustments.

95 Reclassification adjustments arise, for example, on disposal of a foreign operation (see HKAS 21), on derecognition of available-for-sale financial assets (see HKAS 39) and when a hedged forecast transaction affects profit or loss (see paragraph 100 of HKAS 39 in relation to cash flow hedges).

96 Reclassification adjustments do not arise on changes in revaluation surplus recognised in accordance with HKAS 16 or HKAS 38 or on actuarial gains and losses on defined benefit plans recognised in accordance with paragraph 93A of HKAS 19. These components are recognised in other comprehensive income and are not reclassified to profit or loss in subsequent periods. Changes in revaluation surplus may be transferred to retained earnings in subsequent periods as the asset is used or when it is derecognised (see HKAS 16 and HKAS 38). Actuarial gains and losses are reported in retained earnings in the period that they are recognised as other comprehensive income (see HKAS 19).

Information to be presented in the statement of comprehensive income or in the notes

97 When items of income or expense are material, an entity shall disclose their nature and amount separately.

98 Circumstances that would give rise to the separate disclosure of items of income and expense include:

(a) write-downs of inventories to net realisable value or of property, plant and equipment to recoverable amount, as well as reversals of such write-downs;

(b) restructurings of the activities of an entity and reversals of any provisions for the costs of restructuring;

(c) disposals of items of property, plant and equipment;

(d) disposals of investments;

(e) discontinued operations;

(f) litigation settlements; and

(g) other reversals of provisions.

99 An entity shall present an analysis of expenses recognised in profit or loss using a classification based on either their nature or their function within the entity, whichever provides information that is reliable and more relevant.

100 Entities are encouraged to present the analysis in paragraph 99 in the statement of comprehensive income or in the separate income statement (if presented).

101 Expenses are subclassified to highlight components of financial performance that may differ in terms of frequency, potential for gain or loss and predictability. This analysis is provided in one of two forms.

102 The first form of analysis is the 'nature of expense' method. An entity aggregates expenses within profit or loss according to their nature (for example, depreciation, purchases of materials, transport costs, employee benefits and advertising costs), and does not reallocate them among functions within the entity. This method may be simple to apply because no allocations of expenses to functional classifications are necessary. An example of a classification using the nature of expense method is as follows:

Revenue		X
Other income		X
Changes in inventories of finished goods and work in progress	X	
Raw materials and consumables used	X	
Employee benefits expense	X	
Depreciation and amortisation expense	X	
Other expenses	X	
Total expenses		(X)
Profit before tax		X

103 The second form of analysis is the 'function of expense' or 'cost of sales' method and classifies expenses according to their function as part of cost of sales or, for example, the costs of distribution or administrative activities. At a minimum, an entity discloses its cost of sales under this method separately from other expenses. This method can provide more relevant information to users than the classification of expenses by nature, but allocating costs to functions may require arbitrary allocations and involve considerable judgement. An example of a classification using the function of expense method is as follows:

Revenue	X
Cost of sales	(X)
Gross profit	X
Other income	X
Distribution costs	(X)
Administrative expenses	(X)
Other expenses	(X)
Profit before tax	X

104 An entity classifying expenses by function shall disclose additional information on the nature of expenses, including depreciation and amortisation expense and employee benefits expense.

105 The choice between the function of expense method and the nature of expense method depends on historical and industry factors and the nature of the entity. Both methods provide an indication of those costs that might vary, directly or indirectly, with the level of sales or production of the entity. Because each method of presentation has merit for different types of entities, this Standard requires management to select the presentation that is reliable and more relevant. However, because information on the nature of expenses is useful in predicting future cash flows, additional disclosure is required when the function of expense classification is used. In paragraph 104, 'employee benefits' has the same meaning as in HKAS 19.

Statement of changes in equity

Information to be presented in the statement of changes in equity

106 An entity shall present a statement of changes in equity as required by paragraph 10. The statement of changes in equity includes the following information~~showing in the statement~~:

- **(a) total comprehensive income for the period, showing separately the total amounts attributable to owners of the parent and to non-controlling interests;**
- **(b) for each component of equity, the effects of retrospective application or retrospective restatement recognised in accordance with HKAS 8; and**
- **(c)** [deleted]
- **(d) for each component of equity, a reconciliation between the carrying amount at the beginning and the end of the period, separately disclosing changes resulting from:**
  - **(i) profit or loss;**
  - **(ii) ~~each item of~~ other comprehensive income; and**
  - **(iii) transactions with owners in their capacity as owners, showing separately contributions by and distributions to owners and changes in ownership interests in subsidiaries that do not result in a loss of control.**

Information to be presented in the statement of changes in equity or in the notes

106A For each component of equity an entity shall present, either in the statement of changes in equity or in the notes, an analysis of other comprehensive income by item (see paragraph 106(d)(ii)).

107 An entity shall present, either in the statement of changes in equity or in the notes, the amount of dividends recognised as distributions to owners during the period, and the related amount of dividends per share.

108 In paragraph 106, the components of equity include, for example, each class of contributed equity, the accumulated balance of each class of other comprehensive income and retained earnings.

109 Changes in an entity's equity between the beginning and the end of the reporting period reflect the increase or decrease in its net assets during the period. Except for changes resulting from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners (such as equity contributions, reacquisitions of the entity's own equity instruments and dividends) and transaction costs directly related to such transactions, the overall change in equity during a period represents the total amount of income and expense, including gains and losses, generated by the entity's activities during that period.

110 HKAS 8 requires retrospective adjustments to effect changes in accounting policies, to the extent practicable, except when the transition provisions in another HKFRS require otherwise. HKAS 8 also requires restatements to correct errors to be made retrospectively, to the extent practicable. Retrospective adjustments and retrospective restatements are not changes in equity but they are adjustments to the opening balance of retained earnings, except when an HKFRS requires retrospective adjustment of another component of equity. Paragraph 106(b) requires disclosure in the statement of changes in equity of the total adjustment to each component of equity resulting from changes in accounting policies and, separately, from corrections of errors. These adjustments are disclosed for each prior period and the beginning of the period.

Statement of cash flows

111 Cash flow information provides users of financial statements with a basis to assess the ability of the entity to generate cash and cash equivalents and the needs of the entity to utilise those cash flows. HKAS 7 sets out requirements for the presentation and disclosure of cash flow information.

Notes

Structure

112 The notes shall:

(a) present information about the basis of preparation of the financial statements and the specific accounting policies used in accordance with paragraphs 117–124;

(b) disclose the information required by HKFRSs that is not presented elsewhere in the financial statements; and

(c) provide information that is not presented elsewhere in the financial statements, but is relevant to an understanding of any of them.

113 An entity shall, as far as practicable, present notes in a systematic manner. An entity shall cross-reference each item in the statements of financial position and of comprehensive income, in the separate income statement (if presented), and in the statements of changes in equity and of cash flows to any related information in the notes.

114 An entity normally presents notes in the following order, to assist users to understand the financial statements and to compare them with financial statements of other entities:

(a) statement of compliance with HKFRSs (see paragraph 16);

(b) summary of significant accounting policies applied (see paragraph 117);

(c) supporting information for items presented in the statements of financial position and of comprehensive income, in the separate income statement (if presented), and in the statements of changes in equity and of cash flows, in the order in which each statement and each line item is presented; and

(d) other disclosures, including:

(i) contingent liabilities (see HKAS 37) and unrecognised contractual commitments, and

(ii) non-financial disclosures, eg the entity's financial risk management objectives and policies (see HKFRS 7).

115 In some circumstances, it may be necessary or desirable to vary the order of specific items within the notes. For example, an entity may combine information on changes in fair value recognised in profit or loss with information on maturities of financial instruments, although the former disclosures relate to the statement of comprehensive income or separate income statement (if presented) and the latter relate to the statement of financial position. Nevertheless, an entity retains a systematic structure for the notes as far as practicable.

116 An entity may present notes providing information about the basis of preparation of the financial statements and specific accounting policies as a separate section of the financial statements.

Disclosure of accounting policies

117 An entity shall disclose in the summary of significant accounting policies:

(a) the measurement basis (or bases) used in preparing the financial statements, and

(b) the other accounting policies used that are relevant to an understanding of the financial statements.

118 It is important for an entity to inform users of the measurement basis or bases used in the financial statements (for example, historical cost, current cost, net realisable value, fair value or recoverable amount) because the basis on which an entity prepares the financial statements significantly affects users' analysis. When an entity uses more than one measurement basis in the financial statements, for example when particular classes of assets are revalued, it is sufficient to provide an indication of the categories of assets and liabilities to which each measurement basis is applied.

119 In deciding whether a particular accounting policy should be disclosed, management considers whether disclosure would assist users in understanding how transactions, other events and conditions are reflected in reported financial performance and financial position. Disclosure of particular accounting policies is especially useful to users when those policies are selected from alternatives allowed in HKFRSs. An example is disclosure of whether a venturer recognises its interest in a jointly controlled entity using proportionate consolidation or the equity method (see HKAS 31 *Interests in Joint Ventures*). Some HKFRSs specifically require disclosure of particular accounting policies, including choices made by management between different policies they allow. For example, HKAS 16 requires disclosure of the measurement bases used for classes of property, plant and equipment.

120 Each entity considers the nature of its operations and the policies that the users of its financial statements would expect to be disclosed for that type of entity. For example, users would expect an entity subject to income taxes to disclose its accounting policies for income taxes, including those applicable to deferred tax liabilities and assets. When an entity has significant foreign operations or transactions in foreign currencies, users would expect disclosure of accounting policies for the recognition of foreign exchange gains and losses.

121 An accounting policy may be significant because of the nature of the entity's operations even if amounts for current and prior periods are not material. It is also appropriate to disclose each significant accounting policy that is not specifically required by HKFRSs but the entity selects and applies in accordance with HKAS 8.

122 An entity shall disclose, in the summary of significant accounting policies or other notes, the judgements, apart from those involving estimations (see paragraph 125), that management has made in the process of applying the entity's accounting policies and that have the most significant effect on the amounts recognised in the financial statements.

123 In the process of applying the entity's accounting policies, management makes various judgements, apart from those involving estimations, that can significantly affect the amounts it recognises in the financial statements. For example, management makes judgements in determining:

(a) whether financial assets are held-to-maturity investments;

(b) when substantially all the significant risks and rewards of ownership of financial assets and lease assets are transferred to other entities;

(c) whether, in substance, particular sales of goods are financing arrangements and therefore do not give rise to revenue; and

(d) whether the substance of the relationship between the entity and a special purpose entity indicates that the entity controls the special purpose entity.

124 Some of the disclosures made in accordance with paragraph 122 are required by other HKFRSs. For example, HKAS 27 requires an entity to disclose the reasons why the entity's ownership interest does not constitute control, in respect of an investee that is not a subsidiary even though more than half of its voting or potential voting power is owned directly or indirectly through subsidiaries. HKAS 40 *Investment Property* requires disclosure of the criteria developed by the entity to distinguish investment property from owner-occupied property and from property held for sale in the ordinary course of business, when classification of the property is difficult.

Sources of estimation uncertainty

125 An entity shall disclose information about the assumptions it makes about the future, and other major sources of estimation uncertainty at the end of the reporting period, that have a significant risk of resulting in a material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities within the next financial year. In respect of those assets and liabilities, the notes shall include details of:

(a) their nature, and

(b) their carrying amount as at the end of the reporting period.

126 Determining the carrying amounts of some assets and liabilities requires estimation of the effects of uncertain future events on those assets and liabilities at the end of the reporting period. For example, in the absence of recently observed market prices, future-oriented estimates are necessary to measure the recoverable amount of classes of property, plant and equipment, the effect of technological obsolescence on inventories, provisions subject to the future outcome of litigation in progress, and long-term employee benefit liabilities such as pension obligations. These estimates involve assumptions about such items as the risk adjustment to cash flows or discount rates, future changes in salaries and future changes in prices affecting other costs.

127 The assumptions and other sources of estimation uncertainty disclosed in accordance with paragraph 125 relate to the estimates that require management's most difficult, subjective or complex judgements. As the number of variables and assumptions affecting the possible future resolution of the uncertainties increases, those judgements become more subjective and complex, and the potential for a consequential material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities normally increases accordingly.

128 The disclosures in paragraph 125 are not required for assets and liabilities with a significant risk that their carrying amounts might change materially within the next financial year if, at the end of the reporting period, they are measured at fair value based on recently observed market prices. Such fair values might change materially within the next financial year but these changes would not arise from assumptions or other sources of estimation uncertainty at the end of the reporting period.

129 An entity presents the disclosures in paragraph 125 in a manner that helps users of financial statements to understand the judgements that management makes about the future and about other sources of estimation uncertainty. The nature and extent of the information provided vary according to the nature of the assumption and other circumstances. Examples of the types of disclosures an entity makes are:

(a) the nature of the assumption or other estimation uncertainty;

(b) the sensitivity of carrying amounts to the methods, assumptions and estimates underlying their calculation, including the reasons for the sensitivity;

(c) the expected resolution of an uncertainty and the range of reasonably possible outcomes within the next financial year in respect of the carrying amounts of the assets and liabilities affected; and

(d) an explanation of changes made to past assumptions concerning those assets and liabilities, if the uncertainty remains unresolved.

130 This Standard does not require an entity to disclose budget information or forecasts in making the disclosures in paragraph 125.

131 Sometimes it is impracticable to disclose the extent of the possible effects of an assumption or another source of estimation uncertainty at the end of the reporting period. In such cases, the entity discloses that it is reasonably possible, on the basis of existing knowledge, that outcomes within the next financial year that are different from the assumption could require a material adjustment to the carrying amount of the asset or liability affected. In all cases, the entity discloses the nature and carrying amount of the specific asset or liability (or class of assets or liabilities) affected by the assumption.

132 The disclosures in paragraph 122 of particular judgements that management made in the process of applying the entity's accounting policies do not relate to the disclosures of sources of estimation uncertainty in paragraph 125.

133 Other HKFRSs require the disclosure of some of the assumptions that would otherwise be required in accordance with paragraph 125. For example, HKAS 37 requires disclosure, in specified circumstances, of major assumptions concerning future events affecting classes of provisions. HKFRS 7 requires disclosure of significant assumptions the entity uses in estimating the fair values of financial assets and financial liabilities that are carried at fair value. HKAS 16 requires disclosure of significant assumptions that the entity uses in estimating the fair values of revalued items of property, plant and equipment.

Capital

134 An entity shall disclose information that enables users of its financial statements to evaluate the entity's objectives, policies and processes for managing capital.

135 To comply with paragraph 134, the entity discloses the following:

(a) qualitative information about its objectives, policies and processes for managing capital, including:

(i) a description of what it manages as capital;

(ii) when an entity is subject to externally imposed capital requirements, the nature of those requirements and how those requirements are incorporated into the management of capital; and

(iii) how it is meeting its objectives for managing capital.

(b) summary quantitative data about what it manages as capital. Some entities regard some financial liabilities (eg some forms of subordinated debt) as part of capital. Other entities regard capital as excluding some components of equity (eg components arising from cash flow hedges).

(c) any changes in (a) and (b) from the previous period.

(d) whether during the period it complied with any externally imposed capital requirements to which it is subject.

(e) when the entity has not complied with such externally imposed capital requirements, the consequences of such non-compliance.

The entity bases these disclosures on the information provided internally to key management personnel.

136 An entity may manage capital in a number of ways and be subject to a number of different capital requirements. For example, a conglomerate may include entities that undertake insurance activities and banking activities and those entities may operate in several jurisdictions. When an aggregate disclosure of capital requirements and how capital is managed would not provide useful information or distorts a financial statement user's understanding of an entity's capital resources, the entity shall disclose separate information for each capital requirement to which the entity is subject.

Puttable financial instruments classified as equity

136A For puttable financial instruments classified as equity instruments, an entity shall disclose (to the extent not disclosed elsewhere):

(a) summary quantitative data about the amount classified as equity;

(b) its objectives, policies and processes for managing its obligation to repurchase or redeem the instruments when required to do so by the instrument holders, including any changes from the previous period;

(c) the expected cash outflow on redemption or repurchase of that class of financial instruments; and

(d) information about how the expected cash outflow on redemption or repurchase was determined.

Other disclosures

137 An entity shall disclose in the notes:

(a) the amount of dividends proposed or declared before the financial statements were authorised for issue but not recognised as a distribution to owners during the period, and the related amount per share; and

(b) the amount of any cumulative preference dividends not recognised.

138 An entity shall disclose the following, if not disclosed elsewhere in information published with the financial statements:

(a) the domicile and legal form of the entity, its country of incorporation and the address of its registered office (or principal place of business, if different from the registered office);

(b) a description of the nature of the entity's operations and its principal activities;

(c) the name of the parent and the ultimate parent of the group; and

(d) if it is a limited life entity, information regarding the length of its life.

Transition and effective date

139 An entity shall apply this Standard for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009. Earlier application is permitted. If an entity adopts this Standard for an earlier period, it shall disclose that fact.

139A HKAS 27 (as amended in 2008) amended paragraph 106. An entity shall apply that amendment for annual periods beginning or or after 1 July 2009. If an entity applies HKAS 27 (amended 2008) for an earlier period, the amendment shall be applied for that earlier period. The amendment shall be applied retrospectively.

139B *Puttable Financial Instruments and Obligations Arising on Liquidation* (Amendments to HKAS 32 and HKAS 1), issued in June 2008, amended paragraph 138 and inserted paragraphs 8A, 80A and 136A. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009. Earlier application is permitted. If an entity applies the amendments for an earlier period, it shall disclose that fact and apply the related amendments to HKAS 32, HKAS 39, HKFRS 7 and HK(IFRIC)-Int 2 *Members' Shares in Co-operative Entities and Similar Instruments* at the same time.

139C Paragraphs 68 and 71 were amended by *Improvements to HKFRSs* issued in May 2008. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009. Earlier application is permitted. If an entity applies the amendments for an earlier period it shall disclose that fact.

139D Paragraph 69 was amended by *Improvements to HKFRSs* issued in May 2009. An entity shall apply that amendment for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2010. Earlier application is permitted. If an entity applies the amendment for an earlier period it shall disclose that fact.

139E *[This paragraph refers to amendments with an effective date after 1 January 2012, and is therefore not included in this edition.]*

139F Paragraphs 106 and 107 were amended and paragraph 106A was added by *Improvements to HKFRSs* issued in May 2010. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011. Earlier application is permitted.

Withdrawal of HKAS 1 (issued 2004)

140 This Standard supersedes HKAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* issued in 2004, as amended in 2005.

Appendix A
Amendments to other pronouncements

The amendments in this appendix shall be applied for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009. If an entity applies this Standard for an earlier period, these amendments shall be applied for that earlier period. In the amended paragraphs, new text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

***

The amendments contained in this appendix when the Standard was received in 2007 have been incorporated into the relevant pronouncements.

Appendix B
Comparison with International Accounting Standards

This comparison appendix, which was prepared as at December 2007 and deals only with significant differences in the standards extant, is produced for information only and does not form part of the standards in HKAS 1.

The International Accounting Standard comparable with HKAS 1 is IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*.

The following sets out the major textual difference between HKAS 1 and IAS 1 and the reason for the difference.

Difference	Reason for the differences
(i) IAS 1 paras 15-24 vs HKAS 1 paras 15-24 The terms 'fair presentation' and 'present fairly' used in IAS 1 are replaced by the terms 'true and fair view' and 'achieve a true and fair view' in HKAS 1	To match with the terms used in the Hong Kong Companies Ordinance

Appendix C
Notes on Legal Requirements in Hong Kong

This appendix accompanies, but is not part of, HKAS 1.

The following sets out the legal requirements in Hong Kong that are pertinent to each Hong Kong Accounting Standards or Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards. The references to "the Schedule" below are to the Tenth Schedule to the Companies Ordinance ("CO").

1.	**HKAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements***
	Sections 122 and 123 of the CO requires the directors of a company to prepare a profit and loss account for each financial year, and a balance sheet as at the last day of that year. The accounts must give a true and fair view of the profit or loss and of the state of affairs of the company, and comply with the requirements of the Schedule. Based on the communication with International Accounting Standards Board, the HKICPA believes that the term 'true and fair view' and the term 'fair presentation' used in IAS 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements* are equivalent terms. Please also refer to paragraph 46 of the Framework which contains certain references to the two terms. Sections 124 to 126 of the CO requires, where a company has a subsidiary at the end of its financial year, the directors of a company to prepare group accounts unless the company is, at the end of its financial year, a wholly owned subsidiary of another body corporate. Group accounts, which normally comprise a consolidated balance sheet and a consolidated profit and loss account, must give a true and fair view of the state of affairs and profit or loss of the company and its subsidiaries. Section 129D of the CO requires a directors' report to be attached to every balance sheet laid before a company in general meeting. The legal requirements with regard to the content of a directors' report are dealt with in Sections 129D, 129E and 141C of the CO. Section 122 of the CO requires a company's accounts, together with the directors' report and auditors' reports to be laid before the company at its annual general meeting and the accounts of private companies (other than a private company which is a member of a group of companies which includes a non-private company) and companies limited by guarantee, and all other companies to be made up to not more than 9 and 6 months, respectively, prior to the meeting. Section 111 of the CO requires that, unless approved by the Registrar of Companies, no more than 15 months should elapse between the date of one annual general meeting and the next, and that the first annual general meeting of the company must be held within 18 months of its incorporation. In general terms the legal requirements with regard to the form and content of the accounts are dealt with, inter alia, in Section 122 to 129A and Sections 161 to 161C of the CO and the Schedule.
2	**HKAS 2 *Inventories***
	Paragraph 12(13) of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the manner in which the carrying amount of stock in trade or work in progress has been calculated.

3	**HKAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors***
	Paragraph 17(6)* of the Schedule requires disclosure of the following: "Any material respects in which any items shown in the profit and loss account are affected – ***a. by transactions of a sort not usually undertaken by the company or otherwise by circumstances of an exceptional or non-recurrent nature; or*** b. by any change in the basis of accounting."
4	**HKAS 10 *Events After the Reporting Period***
	Paragraph 9(1)(e) of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the aggregate amount which is recommended for distribution by way of dividend under a separate heading(s) in the balance sheet. Paragraph 13(1)(j) of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the aggregate amount of the dividend paid and proposed in the profit and loss account.
5	**HKAS 11 *Construction Contracts***
	Paragraph 12(13) of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the manner in which the carrying amount of stock in trade or work in progress has been calculated.
6	***HKAS 12* Incomes Taxes**
	Paragraph 8* of the Schedule requires that if an amount is set aside for the purpose of its being used to prevent undue fluctuations in charges for taxation, it shall be stated. Paragraph 12(12)* the Schedule requires that, if such amount has been used during the financial year for another purpose, the amount thereof and the fact that it has been so used shall be stated. Paragraph 12(15) of the Schedule requires disclosure of the basis on which the amount, if any, set aside for Hong Kong profits tax is computed. Paragraph 13(1)(c)* of the Schedule requires disclosure of the amount of the charge to revenue for taxes imposed by the Inland Revenue Ordinance and, if that amount would have been greater but for relief from double taxation, the amount which it would have been but for such relief, and the amount of the charge for taxation imposed outside Hong Kong of profits, income and (so far as charged to revenue) capital gains. Paragraph 17(3)* of the Schedule requires that the basis on which the charge for Hong Kong profit tax is computed shall be stated. Particulars are required of any special circumstances affecting the tax liability for the financial year or succeeding financial years (paragraph 17(4) of the Schedule).

7	**HKAS 16** ***Property, Plant and Equipment***
	Paragraph 4[†] of the Schedule requires that fixed assets, current assets and assets that are neither fixed nor current shall be separately identified, and that the method used to arrive at the amount of fixed assets under each heading should be stated. Paragraph 5*[†] of the Schedule requires disclosure of the aggregate amount of the cost or valuation of fixed assets under appropriate headings and of the aggregate amount provided or written off since the date of acquisition or valuation for depreciation or diminution in value. Paragraph 10 of the Schedule requires that where any liability of the company is secured otherwise than by operation of law on any assets of the company, the fact that that liability is so secured shall be stated, but it shall not be necessary to specify the assets on which the liability is secured. Paragraph 12(4)[†] of the Schedule requires disclosure of particulars of any charge on the assets of the company to secure the liabilities of any other person, including, where practicable, the amount secured. Paragraph 12(6) of the Schedule requires disclosure of, where practicable, the aggregate amount or estimated amount, if it is material, of contracts for capital expenditure, so far as not provided for and the aggregate amount or estimated amount, if it is material, of capital expenditure authorised by the directors which has not been contracted for. Paragraph 12(7)*[†] of the Schedule requires disclosure of the years in which fixed assets were severally valued and their respective values, and in the case of assets valued during the financial period: a. the names of the persons who valued them or particulars of their qualifications for doing so; and b. the bases of valuation used by such persons. Paragraph 12(8)* of the Schedule requires disclosure of the amounts of fixed assets acquired or disposed of during the year under each heading. Where fixed assets include land, paragraph 12(9)* requires separate disclosure of the amounts ascribable to: a. land in Hong Kong held on long lease (not less than 50 years), medium-term lease (10 to 50 years) and short lease (under 10 years) respectively; and b. land outside Hong Kong held freehold, on long lease, medium-term lease and short lease respectively. Under paragraph 13(1)(a)*[†] of the Schedule disclosure must be made of the amount charged to revenue by way of provision for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of fixed assets.

8	**HKAS 17 *Leases***
	Paragraph 13(1)(i)*† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the amount, if material, charged to revenue in respect of sums payable in respect of the hire of plant and machinery.
9	**HKAS 18 *Revenue***
	Paragraph 13(1)(g)*† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the amounts respectively of income from listed investments and income from unlisted investments. Paragraph 13(1)(h)† requires disclosure of rents from land and buildings (after deduction of ground rents, rates and other out-going) if a substantive part of the company's revenue for the financial year consists of such rents. Paragraph 16 of the Schedule requires disclosure of turnover and the method by which it is arrived at. Turnover should consist of revenue arising from the principal activities of the entity and therefore should not usually include those items of revenue and gains that arise incidentally.
10	**HKAS 19 *Employee Benefits***
	The legal requirements as regards the disclosure of directors' emoluments, rights to acquire shares or debentures and other benefits are dealt with in the section below concerning HKAS 24 *Related Party Disclosures*. Under the Employment Ordinance, an enterprise is required to make long service payments to its employees upon the termination of their employment or retirement when the employee fulfils certain conditions and the termination meets the required circumstances. However, where an employee is simultaneously entitled to a long service payment and to a retirement scheme payment, the amount of the long service payment may be reduced by certain benefits arising from the retirement scheme. Based on the enterprise's past experience and the directors' knowledge of the business and work force, it is probable that the enterprise will have to make long service payments to some employees on termination of their employment or retirement. Such long service payments are accounted for as "post-employment benefits: defined benefit plans". Paragraph 30(1) of the Schedule defines "provision" as any amount written off or retained by way of providing for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of assets or any amount retained by way of providing for any known liability of which the amount cannot be determined with substantial accuracy. The amount provided for certain employee benefits (e.g. pensions) falls within this definition. Paragraph 4(1)† of the Schedule requires the classification of provisions under headings appropriate to the company's business. Paragraph 6*† of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the aggregate amount of provisions (other than provisions for depreciation, renewals and diminution in value of assets) under separate headings. Paragraph 7*† of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the source of any increase and the application of any decrease in each sub-heading of provisions.

	Paragraph 13(1)(f)*† of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the amount set aside to provisions (other than provisions for depreciation, renewals and diminution in value of assets) or the amount withdrawn from such provisions and not applied for the purposes of the provisions, if its is material. Paragraph 12(5)*† of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the general nature of any other contingent liabilities not provided for, and, when practicable, the aggregate amount or estimated amount of those liabilities, if it is material.
11	**HKAS 20 *Accounting for Government Grants and Disclosure of Government Assistance***
	Paragraph 4† of the Schedule requires that the method used to arrive at the amount of fixed assets under each heading should be stated. Paragraph 5*† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the aggregate amount of the cost or valuation of fixed assets under appropriate headings and of the aggregate amount provided or written off since the date of acquisition or valuation for depreciation or diminution in value. Paragraph 12(5)*† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the general nature of any other contingent liabilities not provided for, and, when practicable, the aggregate amount or estimated amount of those liabilities, if it is material.
12	**HKAS 21 *The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates***
	Paragraph 12(14)* of the schedule requires disclosure of the basis on which other currencies have been converted into currency in which the balance sheet is expressed, where the amount of the assets or liabilities affected is material.
13	**HKAS 22 *Business Combinations***
	The legal requirements in Hong Kong with regard to the form and content of group accounts and other matters relating to subsidiaries of a company are dealt with in the section below concerning HKAS 27 *Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements*. The Schedule contains the following disclosure requirements for goodwill: a. Balance sheet Paragraph 9(1)(b) of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the unamortised balance of goodwill either as a separate item or aggregated with any unamortised balances on patents and trademarks. This requirement applies whether the goodwill is carried as a separate balance in the books or can only be ascertained from contracts or documents. b. Profit and loss account The amortisation treatment involves the allocation of cost of purchased goodwill over its useful life and can be regarded as depreciation within the meaning of the Schedule. Therefore the disclosure requirements of paragraph 13(1)(a)*† of that Schedule apply and the amount charged to revenue for amortisation of goodwill should be disclosed.

14	**HKAS 23 *Borrowing Costs***
	Paragraph 13(1)(b)* of the Schedule requires disclosure of the following: "the amount of the interest on loans of the following kinds made to the company (whether on the security of debentures or not), namely, bank loans, overdrafts and loans which, not being bank loans or overdrafts, i. are repayable otherwise than by instalments and fall due for repayment before the expiration of the period of 5 years beginning with the day next following the expiration of the financial year; or ii. are repayable by instalments the last of which falls due for payment before the expiration of that period; and the amount of the interest on loans of other kinds so made (whether on the security of debentures or not)".
15	**HKAS 24 *Related Party Disclosures***
	Section 128 of the CO requires that if at the end of its financial year, a company has subsidiaries, the following should be disclosed in the accounts: a. the subsidiary's name; b. its country of incorporation; and c. in relation to shares of each class of the subsidiary held by the company, the identity of the class and the proportion of the nominal value of the issued shares of that class represented by the shares held. Section 129 of the CO requires, subject to certain exemption set out in sections 129(3) to 129(5) that if at the end of its financial year, a company holds more than 20% of any class of issued shares of another body corporate (not being a subsidiary), or the shareholding in another body corporate (not being a subsidiary) exceeds 10% of the total assets of the company, the following should be disclosed: a. the name of that other body corporate; b. its country of incorporation; and c. the identity of the class and the proportion of the nominal value of the issued shares of that class represented by the shares held. Section 129A of the CO requires disclosure of the name and country of incorporation of the body corporate regarded by the directors as being the company's ultimate holding company. Section 129D(3)(i) of the CO requires disclosure in the directors' report of the names of the persons who, at any time during the financial year, were directors of the company. Section 129D(3)(ia) of the CO requires disclosure in the directors' report of a statement of the existence and duration of any contract in force during the year for the management and administration of the whole or any substantial part of the company's business, together with the name of any director interested therein. Section 129D(3)(j) of the CO requires disclosure in the directors' report of any interest of a director in a contract with the company or its subsidiary, holding company or fellow subsidiary, if, in the opinion of the directors, the contract is significant in relation to the company's business and the director's interest is material, whether directly or indirectly, at any time in the year, stating:

	a. the fact that the contract subsists or subsisted; b. the names of the parties involved (other than the company); c. the name of the director (if not a party); d. the nature of the contract; and e. the nature of the director's interest. This does not apply to directors' service contracts nor to contracts between the company and another body corporate where a director's only interest is by virtue of his being a director of that other body. Section 129D(3)(k) of the CO requires disclosure in the directors' report of any directors' rights to acquire shares or debentures, in the company or any other body corporate, under any arrangement to which the company or its subsidiary, holding company or fellow subsidiary is a party, explaining the effects of the arrangement and giving the names of all directors during the year who held shares or debentures acquired pursuant to the arrangement. Section 161 of the CO requires disclosure of the following, distinguishing between emoluments in respect of services as director (of the company or its subsidiary) and other emoluments: a. the aggregate amount of directors' emoluments; b. the aggregate amount of directors' or past directors' pensions; and c. the aggregate amount of any compensation to directors or past directors in respect of loss of office, distinguishing between sums paid by or receivable from the company, its subsidiaries and any other persons. Section 161B $^{\Phi}$ of the CO requires the accounts to contain certain particulars of every relevant transaction, being a loan, quasi-loan or credit transaction, entered into by the company during that financial year or, if made or entered into before it, is outstanding at any time during that financial year to the following parties: a. a director or an officer of the company; b. a director of its holding company; c. a body corporate controlled by a director of the company; or d. persons etc. connected with a director of the company or of its holding company; Paragraph 9(1)(c) of the Schedule requires disclosure of loans to employees, or to trustees for employees (including salaried directors), to purchase fully paid shares in the company or in its holding company. Paragraph 18(2)* of the CO of the Schedule requires the aggregate amounts of shares in, and the amounts owing from (and indebtedness to) the company's subsidiaries to be set out separately from all other assets (and liabilities) of the company.

	Paragraph 18(3)* of the CO requires disclosure of the number, description and amount of the shares in and debentures of the company held by its subsidiaries or their nominees except where the subsidiaries or their nominees hold the shares as trustees and neither the company nor the subsidiaries have any beneficial interest in those shares. Paragraph 19(1)* of the CO of the Schedule requires disclosure of the aggregate amounts owing from and indebtedness to the company's holding companies and fellow subsidiaries, and the aggregate amount of assets consisting of shares in fellow subsidiaries.
16	**HKAS 27 *Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements***
	Under section 2(4) of the CO, a company shall be deemed to be a subsidiary of another company, if: a. that other company: i. controls the composition of the board of directors of the first mentioned company; or ii. controls more than half of the voting power of the first mentioned company; or iii. holds more than half of the issued share capital of the first mentioned company (excluding any part of it which carries no right to participate beyond a specified amount in a distribution of either profits or capital); or b. the first mentioned company is a subsidiary of any company which is that other company's subsidiary. For the purposes of defining a subsidiary under section 2(4) of the CO, section 2(5) of the CO states that the composition of a company's board of directors shall be deemed to be controlled by another company if that other company by the exercise of some power exercisable by it, without the consent of any other person, can appoint or remove all or a majority of the directors, and, for the purposes of this provision, that other company shall be deemed to have power to make such an appointment if: a. a person cannot be appointed as a director without the exercise in his favour by that other company of such a power; or b. a person's appointment as a director follows necessarily from his being a director or other officer of that other company.

The Companies (Amendment) Ordinance 2005 introduced a definition of "parent undertaking" and "subsidiary undertaking". A provision to deem a holding company to include a parent company and a subsidiary to include a subsidiary undertaking was added in Section 2B. In essence, this enable Hong Kong incorporated companies to use the definition of subsidiary in HKAS 27 for the purpose of preparing group accounts. Parent undertaking and subsidiary undertaking are defined in Schedule 23 as follows:

(1) An undertaking is a parent undertaking ("parent undertaking") in relation to another undertaking ("subsidiary undertaking") if—

(a) (i) in the case where both the parent undertaking and the subsidiary undertaking are bodies corporate, the subsidiary undertaking is a subsidiary of the parent undertaking by virtue of section 2(4), (5), (6) and (7) of the CO; or

(ii) in any other case, the parent undertaking—

(A) holds a majority of the voting rights in the subsidiary undertaking;

(B) is a member of the subsidiary undertaking and has the right to appoint or remove a majority of its board of directors; or

(C) is a member of the subsidiary undertaking and controls alone, pursuant to an agreement with other shareholders or members, a majority of the voting rights in the subsidiary undertaking; or

(b) the parent undertaking has the right to exercise a dominant influence over the subsidiary undertaking by virtue of—

(i) the provisions contained in the subsidiary undertaking's memorandum or articles or equivalent constitutional documents; or

(ii) a control contract.

(2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(a)(ii), an undertaking shall be treated as a member of another undertaking ("the relevant undertaking"), if—

(a) any of its subsidiary undertakings is a member of the relevant undertaking; or

(b) any shares in the relevant undertaking are held by a person acting on behalf of the first-mentioned undertaking or any of its subsidiary undertakings.

(3) An undertaking shall be treated as the parent undertaking of another undertaking if a subsidiary undertaking of the first-mentioned undertaking is, or is to be treated as, the parent undertaking of that other undertaking; and references to a subsidiary undertaking of the first-mentioned undertaking shall be construed accordingly.

The obligation to lay group accounts before the members of a holding company in general meeting is set out in section 124(1) of the CO. In general terms the form and content of group accounts are dealt with inter alia in sections 125 and 126 of the CO and in the Schedule.

	Under section 124(2)(a) of the CO group accounts shall not be required where the holding company is at the end of its financial year the wholly-owned subsidiary of another body corporate. Section 124(2)(b) of the Companies Ordinance also allows group accounts (subject to approval of the Financial Secretary in certain instances) not to deal with a subsidiary if the company's directors are of the opinion that: a. it is impracticable, or would be of no real value to members of the company, in view of the insignificant amount involved, or would involve expense or delay out of proportion to the value to members of the company; or b. the result would be misleading, or harmful to the business of the company or any of its subsidiaries; or c. the business of the holding company and that of the subsidiary are so different that they cannot reasonably be treated as a single undertaking. It should be noted that HKAS 27 takes the view that all subsidiaries should be included in the consolidated financial statements. In general, section 125 of the CO requires group accounts to be presented in the form of consolidated accounts and should comprise a consolidated balance sheet and a consolidated profit and loss account dealing with the state of affairs and profit or loss of the company and its subsidiaries. However, section 125 of the CO also accepts that group accounts may be presented in a form other than a single set of consolidated accounts under certain conditions. It is generally accepted that consolidated financial statements are usually the best means of achieving the objective of giving a true and fair view of the profit or loss and of the state of affairs of the group. It should be noted that, where subsidiaries are not dealt with in group accounts or are being dealt with in a form of group accounts other than consolidated financial statements, information may still be required by law about the results of these subsidiaries and the extent to which they have been dealt with in the accounts of the holding company (paragraphs 18(4) and 24 of the Schedule). Section 127(1) of the of the CO states that a holding company's directors shall secure that, except where in their opinion there are good reasons against it, the financial year of each of its subsidiaries shall coincide with the company's own financial year. Section 126(2) of the CO requires that, if the financial year of a subsidiary is not co-terminous with that of the holding company, the group accounts shall deal with the subsidiary's results and state of affairs as of the last financial year ending on or before the date of the holding company's balance sheet. It also requires the disclosure of the reasons why the financial year of a subsidiary does not coincide with that of the holding company. Paragraph 18(2) and 19(1) of the Schedule require disclosure of the aggregate amounts of shares in, and the amounts owing from and indebtedness to, the subsidiaries and fellow subsidiaries.

	Paragraphs 18(4), 18(5) and 24(b) of the Schedule require disclosure of the following information where group accounts are not submitted: a. the reasons why subsidiaries are not dealt with in group accounts; b. the net aggregate amount attributable to the holding company of the profits less losses of such subsidiaries, dealt with this year and not dealt with, in the company's accounts, both for: – the financial years of subsidiaries ending with or during the financial year of the company; and – their previous financial years since acquisition; and c. any material qualifications in the auditors' report and any note to the accounts disclosing a matter which, in the absence of such disclosure, would have been referred to in an audit report qualification, to the extent that the matter is not referred to in the holding company's audit report and is material from the point of view of its members. Paragraphs 18(6) and 25 of the Schedule requires disclosure of the following information where group accounts are not submitted and the subsidiaries' financial year did not end with that of the company: a. the reasons why the company's directors consider that the subsidiaries' financial years should not end with that of the company; and b. the dates on which the subsidiaries' financial years ending last before that of the company respectively ended or the earliest and latest of those dates. The Companies (Amendment) Ordinance 2005, in general, redefines the definition of "subsidiary" for the purpose of preparing group accounts to include a subsidiary undertaking as defined in the new Schedule 23 and includes a true and fair overriding provision. In essence, this would enable Hong Kong incorporated companies to use the definition of subsidiary in HKAS 27 for the purpose of preparing group accounts.
17	**HKAS 28 *Investment in Associates***
	Section 129 of the Companies Ordinance requires that if at the balance sheet date, a company holds more than 20% of any class of issued shares of another company, or the shareholding in another company exceeds 10% of the total assets of the investing company, the following should be disclosed subject to sections 129(3) to 129(5) of the CO: a. the name of that other company; b. its country of incorporation; and c. the identity of the class and the proportion of the nominal value of the issued share of that class represented by the shares held. In the case of an investee company which is either incorporated outside Hong Kong or carries on business outside Hong Kong, section 129(3) of the Companies Ordinance provides that disclosure of the company's name and other particulars need not be made if in the opinion of the directors and with the concurrence of the Financial Secretary such disclosure would be harmful.

	Paragraph 9(1)(a)† of the Schedule requires separate disclosure of the aggregate amounts respectively of listed investments and unlisted investments. Paragraph 9(3)† of the Schedule requires that the amount of listed investments in the balance sheet should be analysed into those listed in Hong Kong and those listed outside Hong Kong. Paragraph 12(5)† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the general nature of any other contingent liabilities not provided for and, where practicable, the aggregate amount or estimated amount of those liabilities, if it is material. Paragraph 12(6) of the Schedule requires disclosure of, where practicable, the aggregate amount or estimated amount, if it is material, of contracts for capital expenditure, so far as not provided for and the aggregate amount or estimated amount, if it is material, of capital expenditure authorised by the directors which has not been contracted for. Paragraph 13(1)(g)*† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the amounts respectively of income from listed investments and income from unlisted investments.
18	**HKAS 31 *Interests in Joint Ventures***
	Section 129 of the Companies Ordinance requires that if at the balance sheet date, a company holds more than 20% of any class of issued shares of another company, or the shareholding in another company exceeds 10% of the total assets of the investing company, the following should be disclosed: a. the name of that other company; b. its country of incorporation; and c. the identity of the class and the proportion of the nominal value of the issued shares of that class represented by the shares held. In the case of an investee company which is either incorporated outside Hong Kong or carries on business outside Hong Kong, section 129(3) of the Companies Ordinance provides that disclosure of a company's name and other particulars need not be made if in the opinion of the directors and with the concurrence of the Financial Secretary such disclosure would be harmful. Paragraph 9(1)(a)† of the Schedule requires separate disclosure of the aggregate amounts respectively of listed investments and unlisted investments. Paragraph 9(3)† of the Schedule requires that the amount of listed investments in the balance sheet should be analysed into those listed in Hong Kong and those listed outside Hong Kong. Paragraph 12(5)† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the general nature of any other contingent liabilities not provided for and, where practicable, the aggregate amount or estimated amount of those liabilities, if it is material. Paragraph 12(6) of the Schedule requires disclosure of, where practicable, the aggregate amount or estimated amount, if it is material, of contracts for capital expenditure, so far as not provided for and the aggregate amount or estimated amount, if it is material, of capital expenditure authorised by the directors which has not been contracted for. Paragraph 13(1)(g)*† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the amounts respectively of income from listed investments and income from unlisted investments.

19	**HKAS 36 *Impairment of Assets***
	Paragraph 30(1) of the Schedule defines "provision" as any amount written off or retained by way of providing for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of assets or retained by way of providing for any known liability of which the amount cannot be determined with substantial accuracy. This covers the definition of "impairment loss" in paragraph 5 of HKAS 36. Paragraph 4(1)† of the Schedule requires the classification of provisions under headings appropriate to the company's business. Paragraph 7*† of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the source of any increase and the application of any decrease in each sub-heading of provisions.
20	**HKAS 37 *Provisions, Contingent Liabilities And Contingent Assets***
	Paragraph 30(1) of the Schedule defines "provision" as any amount written off or retained by way of providing for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of assets or any amount retained by way of providing for any known liability of which the amount cannot be determined with substantial accuracy. This definition is wider in scope than the definition in HKAS 37. Paragraph 4(1)† of the Schedule requires the classification of provisions under headings appropriate to the company's business. Paragraph 6*† of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the aggregate amount of provisions (other than provisions for depreciation, renewals and diminution in value of assets) under separate headings. Paragraph 7*† of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the source of any increase and the application of any decrease in each sub-heading of provisions. Paragraph 13(1)(f)*† of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the amount set aside to provisions (other than provisions for depreciation, renewals and diminution in value of assets) or the amount withdrawn from such provisions and not applied for the purposes of the provisions, if it is material. Paragraph 12(4)† of the Schedule requires the disclosure of particulars of any charge on the assets of the company to secure the liabilities of any other person, including, where practicable, the amount secured. Paragraph 12(5)† of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the general nature of any other contingent liabilities not provided for, and, when practicable, the aggregate amount or estimated amount of those liabilities, if it is material.

21	**HKAS 38 *Intangible Assets***
	Paragraph 9(1)(b) of the Schedule requires the disclosure of the unamortised balances on patents and trademarks either as separate items or aggregated with any unamortised balance of goodwill. This requirement applies whether the patents and trademarks are carried as balances in the books or can only be ascertained from contracts or documents. The amortisation treatment involves the allocation of the depreciable amount of an intangible asset over the best estimate of its useful life and can be regarded as depreciation within the meaning of the Schedule. Therefore, the disclosure requirements of paragraph 13(1)(a)*† of the Schedule apply and the amount charged to revenue for amortisation of an intangible asset should be disclosed.
22	**HKAS 40 *Investment Property***
	Paragraph 5*† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the aggregate amount of the cost or valuation of fixed assets under appropriate headings and of the aggregate amount provided or written off since the date of acquisition or valuation for depreciation or diminution in value. Paragraph 10 of the Schedule requires that where any liability of the company is secured otherwise than by operation of law on any assets of the company, the fact that that liability is so secured shall be stated, but it shall not be necessary to specify the assets on which the liability is secured. Paragraph 12(4)† of the Schedule requires disclosure of particulars of any charge on the assets of the company to secure the liabilities of any other person, including, where practicable, the amount secured. Paragraph 12(7)*† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the years in which fixed assets were severally valued and their respective values, and in the case of assets valued during the financial period: a. the name of the persons who valued them or particulars of their qualifications for doing so; and b. the bases of valuation used by such persons. Paragraph 12(8)*† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the aggregate amounts of fixed assets acquired or disposed of during the year under each heading. Where fixed assets include land, paragraph 12(9)* requires separate disclosure of the amounts ascribable to: a. land in Hong Kong held on long lease, medium-term lease and short lease respectively; and b. land outside Hong Kong held freehold, on long lease, medium-term lease and short lease respectively. Under paragraph 13(1)(a)*† of the Schedule disclosure must be made of the amount charged to revenue by way of provision for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of fixed assets. Paragraph 13(1)(h)† of the Schedule requires disclosure of rental income from land and buildings (after deduction of ground rents, rates and other out-goings) if a substantive part of the company's revenue for the financial year consists of such rents.

23	**HKAS 41 *Agriculture***
	Paragraph 12(5)† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the general nature of any other contingent liabilities not provided for, and, when practicable, the aggregate amount or estimated amount of those liabilities, if it is material. Paragraph 12(7)*† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the years in which fixed assets were severally valued and their respective values, and in the case of assets valued during the financial period: a. the names of the persons who valued them or particulars of their qualifications for doing so; and b. the bases of valuation used by such persons. Under paragraph 13(1)(a)*† of the Schedule disclosure must be made of the amount charged to revenue by way of provision for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of fixed assets.
24	**HKFRS 7 *Financial Instruments: Disclosures***
	Section 129 of the Companies Ordinance requires that if at the balance sheet date, a company holds more than 20% of any class of issued shares of another company, or the shareholding in another company exceeds 10% of the total assets of the investing company, the following should be disclosed: a. the name of that other company; b. its country of incorporation; and c. the identity of the class and the proportion of the nominal value of the issued shares of that class represented by the shares held. Paragraph 4(2)† of the Schedule requires fixed assets, current assets and assets that are neither fixed nor current to be separately identified. Paragraph 5*† of the Schedule requires that where the directors' valuation of unlisted investments is not given and such investments are classified as fixed assets, the following should be stated: a. cost or valuation as shown in the company's books; and b. any amount provided or written off for diminution in value. Paragraph 9(1)(a) of the Schedule requires separate disclosure of the aggregate amounts respectively of listed investments and unlisted investments. Paragraph 9(1)(d) requires disclosure of the aggregate amount of banks loans and overdrafts and the aggregate amount of loans (other than bank loans and overdrafts) repayable wholly in part more than five years from the balance sheet date. Paragraph 9(3)† of the Schedule requires that the carrying amounts of listed investments in the balance sheet should be analysed into those listed in Hong Kong and those listed outside Hong Kong. Paragraph 9(4) of the Schedule requires disclosure of the terms of repayments and the rate of interests for each loan, other than a bank loan or an overdraft, specified in paragraph 9(1)(d) of the Schedule

	Paragraph 12(10) of the Schedule requires that, if in the opinion of the directors, the realisable value of any current assets is less than the balance sheet value, a statement of that fact should be included in the accounts. Paragraph 12(11)*† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the aggregate market value of listed investments where it differs from the carrying amounts in the balance sheet. If the aggregate market value is higher than the Stock Exchange value, the Stock Exchange value should also be disclosed. Paragraph 13(1)(a)*† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the amount charged to revenue by way of provision for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of fixed assets. Paragraph 13(1)(g)*† of the Schedule requires disclosure of the amounts respectively of income from listed investments and income from unlisted investments.

Notes: * These requirements do not apply to banking companies that are entitled to certain disclosure exemptions under Part III of the Schedule.

† These requirements do not apply to insurance companies that are entitled to certain disclosure exemptions under Part III of the Schedule.

Φ This revised S161B of the CO came into operation for relevant transactions entered into by the company after 13 February 2004.

Appendix ~~E~~D

Amendments to HKAS 1 *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (issued in July 2011) – effective for annual periods beginning on or after 1 July 2012

The following sets out amendments required for this Standard resulting from amendments to HKAS 1 that are not yet effective. Once effective, the amendments set out below will be incorporated into the text of this Standard and this appendix will be deleted. In the amended paragraphs shown below, new text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

A heading and paragraphs IN17–IN19 are added.

Presentation of items of other comprehensive income

IN17 In July 2011 the HKICPA issued *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (Amendments to HKAS 1). The amendments improved the consistency and clarity of the presentation of items of other comprehensive income (OCI). The amendments also highlighted the importance on presenting profit or loss and OCI together and with equal prominence. As explained in paragraph IN13, in 2007 HKAS 1 was amended to require profit or loss and OCI to be presented together. The amendments issued in July 2011 retained that requirement, but focused on improving how items of OCI are presented.

IN18 The main change resulting from the amendments was a requirement for entities to group items presented in OCI on the basis of whether they are potentially reclassifiable to profit or loss subsequently (reclassification adjustments). The amendments did not address which items are presented in OCI.

IN19 The amendments did not change the option to present items of OCI either before tax or net of tax. However, if the items are presented before tax then the tax related to each of the two groups of OCI items (those that might be reclassified and those that will not be reclassified) must be shown separately.

Paragraph 7 is amended (new text is underlined).

7 The following terms are used in this Standard with the meanings specified:

...

Notes **contain information in addition to that presented in the statement of financial position, statement<u>(s)</u> of <u>profit or loss and other</u> comprehensive income, …**

Paragraph 10 is amended (new text is underlined), paragraph 10A is added and paragraph 12 is deleted.

10 A complete set of financial statements comprises:

...

(b) a statement of <u>profit or loss and other</u> comprehensive income for the period;

...

An entity may use titles for the statements other than those used in this Standard. For example, an entity may use the title 'statement of comprehensive income' instead of 'statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income'.

10A An entity may present a single statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income, with profit or loss and other comprehensive income presented in two sections. The sections shall be presented together, with the profit or loss section presented first followed directly by the other comprehensive income section. An entity may present the profit or loss section in a separate statement of profit or loss. If so, the separate statement of profit or loss shall immediately precede the statement presenting comprehensive income, which shall begin with profit or loss.

The headings above paragraphs 81 and 82 and paragraph 82 are amended (new text is underlined and deleted text is struck through) and paragraph 81 is deleted. Paragraphs 81A and 81B, a heading and paragraph 82A are added and paragraphs 83 and 84 are deleted.

Statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income

81A The statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income (statement of comprehensive income) shall present, in addition to the profit or loss and other comprehensive income sections:

(a) profit or loss;

(b) total other comprehensive income;

(c) comprehensive income for the period, being the total of profit or loss and other comprehensive income.

If an entity presents a separate statement of profit or loss it does not present the profit or loss section in the statement presenting comprehensive income.

81B An entity shall present the following items, in addition to the profit or loss and other comprehensive income sections, as allocation of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for the period:

(a) profit or loss for the period attributable to:

(i) non-controlling interests, and

(ii) owners of the parent.

(b) comprehensive income for the period attributable to:

(i) non-controlling interests, and

(ii) owners of the parent.

If an entity presents profit or loss in a separate statement it shall present (a) in that statement.

Information to be presented in the ~~statement of comprehensive income~~ profit or loss section or the statement of profit or loss

82 ~~As a minimum~~ In addition to items required by other HKFRSs, the profit or loss section or the statement of ~~comprehensive income~~ profit or loss shall include line items that present the following amounts for the period:

(a) revenue;

(b) finance costs;

(c) share of the profit or loss of associates and joint ventures accounted for using the equity method;

(d) tax expense;

(e) [deleted] **~~a single amount comprising the total of:~~**

~~(i) the post tax profit or loss of discontinued operations and~~

~~(ii) the post-tax gain or loss recognised on the measurement to fair value less costs to sell or on the disposal of the assets or disposal group(s) constituting the discontinued operation;~~

(ea) a single amount for the total of discontinued operations (see HKFRS 5).

(f)-(i) [deleted]

~~(f) profit or loss;~~

~~(g) each component of other comprehensive income classified by nature (excluding amounts in (h));~~

~~(h) share of the other comprehensive income of associates and joint ventures accounted for using the equity method; and~~

~~(i) total comprehensive income.~~

Information to be presented in the other comprehensive income section

82A The other comprehensive income section shall present line items for amounts of other comprehensive income in the period, classified by nature (including share of the other comprehensive income of associates and joint ventures accounted for using the equity method) and grouped into those that, in accordance with other HKFRSs:

(a) will not be reclassified subsequently to profit or loss; and

(b) will be reclassified subsequently to profit or loss when specific conditions are met.

Paragraphs 85–87, 90, 91, 94, 100 and 115 and the heading above paragraph 97 are amended (new text is underlined and deleted text is struck through) and paragraph 139J is added.

85 An entity shall present additional line items, headings and subtotals in the statement(s) presenting ~~of~~ profit or loss and other comprehensive income ~~and the separate income statement (if presented),~~ when such presentation is relevant to an understanding of the entity's financial performance.

86 Because the effects of an entity's various activities, transactions and other events differ in frequency, potential for gain or loss and predictability, disclosing the components of financial performance assists users in understanding the financial performance achieved and in making projections of future financial performance. An entity includes additional line items in the statement(s) presenting ~~of~~ profit or loss and other comprehensive income ~~and in the separate income statement (if presented),~~ and it amends the descriptions used and the ordering of items when this is necessary to explain the elements of financial performance. …

87 An entity shall not present any items of income or expense as extraordinary items, in the statement(s) presenting ~~of~~ profit or loss and other comprehensive income ~~or in the separate income statement (if presented),~~ or in the notes.

90 An entity shall disclose the amount of income tax relating to each ~~component~~ item of other comprehensive income, including reclassification adjustments, either in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income or in the notes.

91 An entity may present items ~~components~~ of other comprehensive income either:

(a) net of related tax effects, or

(b) before related tax effects with one amount shown for the aggregate amount of income tax relating to those items ~~components~~.

If an entity elects alternative (b), it shall allocate the tax between the items that might be reclassified subsequently to the profit or loss section and those that will not be reclassified subsequently to the profit or loss section.

94 An entity may present reclassification adjustments in the statement(s) of profit or loss and other comprehensive income or in the notes. An entity presenting reclassification adjustments in the notes presents the items ~~components~~ of other comprehensive income after any related reclassification adjustments.

Information to be presented in the statement(s) of profit or loss and other comprehensive income or in the notes

100 Entities are encouraged to present the analysis in paragraph 99 in the statement(s) presenting ~~of~~ profit or loss and other comprehensive income ~~or in the separate income statement (if presented)~~.

115 In some circumstances, it may be necessary or desirable to vary the order of specific items within the notes. For example, an entity may combine information on changes in fair value recognised in profit or loss with information on maturities of financial instruments, although the former disclosures relate to the statement(s) presenting ~~of~~ profit or loss and other comprehensive income ~~or separate income statement (if presented)~~ and the latter relate to the statement of financial position. Nevertheless, an entity retains a systematic structure for the notes as far as practicable.

139J *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (Amendments to HKAS 1), issued in July 2011, amended paragraphs 7, 10, 82, 85–87, 90, 91, 94, 100 and 115, added paragraphs 10A, 81A, 81B and 82A, and deleted paragraphs 12, 81, 83 and 84. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 July 2012. Earlier application is permitted. If an entity applies the amendments for an earlier period it shall disclose that fact.

Amendments to other HKFRSs

This appendix sets out the amendments to other HKFRSs that are a consequence of issuing the amendments to HKAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements.* Amended paragraphs are shown with new text underlined and deleted text struck through. An entity shall apply the amendments when it applies the amendments to HKAS 1 in *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income*.

HKFRS 1 *First-time Adoption of Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards*

Paragraph 21 is amended and paragraph 39K is added.

21 To comply with HKAS 1, an entity's first HKFRS financial statements shall include at least three statements of financial position, two statements of profit or loss and other comprehensive income, two separate ~~income~~ statements of profit or loss (if presented), two statements of cash flows and two statements of changes in equity and related notes, including comparative information.

39K *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (Amendments to HKAS 1), issued in July 2011, amended paragraph 21. An entity shall apply that amendment when it applies HKAS 1 as amended in July 2011.

HKFRS 5 *Non-current Assets Held for Sale and Discontinued Operations*

Paragraph 33A is amended and paragraph 44I is added.

33A If an entity presents the ~~components~~ items of profit or loss in a separate ~~income~~ statement as described in paragraph ~~81~~ 10A of HKAS 1 (as ~~revised~~ amended in 2011~~07~~), a section identified as relating to discontinued operations is presented in that ~~separate~~ statement.

44I *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (Amendments to HKAS 1), issued in July 2011, amended paragraph 33A. An entity shall apply that amendment when it applies HKAS 1 as amended in July 2011.

HKFRS 7 *Financial Instruments: Disclosures*

Paragraph 27B is amended and paragraph 44Q is added.

27B For fair value measurements recognised in the statement of financial position an entity shall disclose for each class of financial instruments:

...

(c) for fair value measurements in Level 3 of the fair value hierarchy, a reconciliation from the beginning balances to the ending balances, disclosing separately changes during the period attributable to the following:

(i) total gains or losses for the period recognised in profit or loss, and a description of where they are presented in the statement(s) of profit or loss and other comprehensive income ~~or the separate income statement (if presented)~~;

…

(d) the amount of total gains or losses for the period in (c)(i) above included in profit or loss that are attributable to gains or losses relating to those assets and liabilities held at the end of the reporting period and a description of where those gains or losses are presented in the statement(s) of profit or loss and other comprehensive income ~~or the separate income statement (if presented)~~.

...

44Q *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (Amendments to HKAS 1), issued in July 2011, amended paragraph 27B. An entity shall apply that amendment when it applies HKAS 1 as amended in July 2011.

HKAS 12 *Income Taxes*

Paragraph 77 is amended, paragraph 77A is deleted and paragraph 98B is added.

77 The tax expense (income) related to profit or loss from ordinary activities shall be presented as part of profit or loss in the statement(s) of profit or loss and other comprehensive income.

98B *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (Amendments to HKAS 1), issued in July 2011, amended paragraph 77 and deleted paragraph 77A. An entity shall apply those amendments when it applies HKAS 1 as amended in July 2011.

HKAS 20 *Accounting for Government Grants and Disclosure of Government Assistance*

In the rubric, ‘paragraphs 1–43’ is amended to ‘paragraphs 1–46’. Paragraph 29 is amended, paragraph 29A is deleted and paragraph 46 is added.

29 Grants related to income are ~~sometimes~~ presented as ~~a credit in the statement of comprehensive income~~ part of profit or loss, either separately or under a general heading such as ‘Other income’; alternatively, they are deducted in reporting the related expense.

46 *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (Amendments to HKAS 1), issued in July 2011, amended paragraph 29 and deleted paragraph 29A. An entity shall apply those amendments when it applies HKAS 1 as amended in July 2011.

HKAS 21 *The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates*

Paragraphs IN14 and 39 are amended and paragraph 60H is added.

IN14 The Standard requires comparative amounts to be translated as follows:

(a) for an entity whose functional currency is not the currency of a hyperinflationary economy:

…

(ii) income and expenses in each statement ~~of~~ presenting profit or loss and other comprehensive income ~~or separate income statement presented~~ are translated at exchange rates at the dates of the transactions (ie last year's comparatives are translated at last year's actual or average rate).

…

39 The results and financial position of an entity whose functional currency is not the currency of a hyperinflationary economy shall be translated into a different presentation currency using the following procedures:

…

(b) income and expenses for each statement ~~of~~ presenting profit or loss and other comprehensive income ~~or separate income statement~~ ~~presented~~ (ie including comparatives) shall be translated at exchange rates at the dates of the transactions; and

(c) …

60H *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (Amendments to HKAS 1), issued in July 2011, amended paragraph 39. An entity shall apply that amendment when it applies HKAS 1 as amended in July 2011.

HKAS 32 *Financial Instruments: Presentation*

Paragraph 40 is amended and paragraph 97K is added.

40 Dividends classified as an expense may be presented in the statement(s) of profit or loss and other comprehensive income ~~or separate income statement (if presented)~~ either with interest on other liabilities or as a separate item. In addition to the requirements of this Standard, disclosure of interest and dividends is subject to the requirements of HKAS 1 and HKFRS 7. In some circumstances, because of the differences between interest and dividends with respect to matters such as tax deductibility, it is desirable to disclose them separately in the statement(s) of profit or loss and other comprehensive income ~~or separate income statement (if presented)~~. Disclosures of the tax effects are made in accordance with HKAS 12.

97K *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (Amendments to HKAS 1), issued in July 2011, amended paragraph 40. An entity shall apply that amendment when it applies HKAS 1 as amended in July 2011.

HKAS 33 *Earnings per Share*

Paragraphs 4A, 67A, 68A and 73A are amended and paragraph 74D is added.

4A If an entity presents ~~the components~~ items of profit or loss in a separate ~~income~~ statement as described in paragraph ~~81~~ 10A of HKAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* (as ~~revised~~ amended in 2011~~07~~), it presents earnings per share only in that separate statement.

67A If an entity presents ~~the components~~ items of profit or loss in a separate ~~income~~ statement as described in paragraph ~~81~~ 10A of HKAS 1 (as ~~revised~~ amended in 2011~~07~~), it presents basic and diluted earnings per share, as required in paragraphs 66 and 67, in that separate statement.

68A If an entity presents ~~the components~~ items of profit or loss in a separate ~~income~~ statement as described in paragraph ~~81~~ 10A of HKAS 1 (as ~~revised~~ amended in 2011~~07~~), it presents basic and diluted earnings per share for the discontinued operation, as required in paragraph 68, in that separate statement or in the notes.

73A Paragraph 73 applies also to an entity that discloses, in addition to basic and diluted earnings per share, amounts per share using a reported ~~component~~ item of ~~the~~ profit or loss ~~separate income statement (as described in paragraph 81 of HKAS 1 (as revised in 2007))~~, other than one required by this Standard.

74D *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (Amendments to HKAS 1), issued in July 2011, amended paragraphs 4A, 67A, 68A and 73A. An entity shall apply those amendments when it applies HKAS 1 as amended in July 2011.

HKAS 34 *Interim Financial Reporting*

In the rubric 'paragraphs 1–49' is amended to 'paragraphs 1–51'. Paragraphs IN5, 8, 8A, 11A and 20 are amended and paragraph 51 is added.

IN5 The minimum content of an interim financial report is a condensed statement of financial position, a condensed statement or statements of profit or loss and other comprehensive income, a condensed statement of cash flows, a condensed statement of changes in equity, and selected explanatory notes. If an entity presents the ~~components~~ items of profit or loss in a separate ~~income~~ statement as described in paragraph ~~81~~ 10A of HKAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* (as ~~revised~~ amended in 2011~~07~~), it presents interim condensed information from that ~~separate~~ statement.

8 An interim financial report shall include, at a minimum, the following components:

…

(b) a condensed statement or condensed statements of profit or loss and other comprehensive income~~, presented as either~~;

~~(i) a condensed single statement; or~~

~~(ii) a condensed separate income statement and a condensed statement of comprehensive income;~~

(c) …

8A If an entity presents ~~the components~~ items of profit or loss in a separate ~~income~~ statement as described in paragraph ~~81~~ 10A of HKAS 1 (as ~~revised~~ amended in 2011~~07~~), it presents interim condensed information from that ~~separate~~ statement.

11A If an entity presents ~~the components~~ items of profit or loss in a separate ~~income~~ statement as described in paragraph ~~81~~ 10A of HKAS 1 (as ~~revised~~ amended in 2011~~07~~), it presents basic and diluted earnings per share in that ~~separate~~ statement.

20 Interim reports shall include interim financial statements (condensed or complete) for periods as follows:

…

(b) statements of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for the current interim period and cumulatively for the current financial year to date, with comparative statements of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for the comparable interim periods (current and year-to-date) of the immediately preceding financial year. As permitted by HKAS 1 (as ~~revised~~ amended in 20~~07~~11), an interim report may present for each period ~~either~~ a ~~single~~ statement or statements of profit or loss and other comprehensive income.~~, or a statement displaying components of profit or loss (separate income statement) and a second statement beginning with profit or loss and displaying components of other comprehensive income (statement of comprehensive income).~~

51 *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (Amendments to HKAS 1), issued in July 2011, amended paragraphs 8, 8A, 11A and 20. An entity shall apply those amendments when it applies HKAS 1 as amended in July 2011.

BASIS FOR CONCLUSIONS ON HKAS 1 *PRESENTATION OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS*

This Basis for Conclusions accompanies, but is not part of, HKAS 1.

HKAS 1 is based on IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial statements*. In approving HKAS 1, the Council of the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants considered and agreed with the IASB's Basis for Conclusions on IAS 1. Accordingly, there are no significant differences between HKAS 1 and IAS 1. The IASB's Basis for Conclusions is reproduced below. The paragraph numbers of IAS 1 referred to below generally correspond with those in HKAS 1.

CONTENTS

Basis for Conclusions on IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*

This Basis for Conclusions accompanies, but is not part of, IAS 1.

The International Accounting Standards Board revised IAS 1 Presentation of Financial Statements *in 2007 as part of its project on financial statement presentation. It was not the Board's intention to reconsider as part of that project all the requirements in IAS 1.*

For convenience, the Board has incorporated into this Basis for Conclusions relevant material from the Basis for Conclusions on the revision of IAS 1 in 2003 and its amendment in 2005. Paragraphs have been renumbered and reorganised as necessary to reflect the new structure of the Standard.

References to the Framework *are to IASC's* Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB in 2001. In September 2010 the IASB replaced the* Framework *with the* Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.*

Introduction

BC1 The International Accounting Standards Committee (IASC) issued the first version of IAS 1 *Disclosure of Accounting Policies* in 1975. It was reformatted in 1994 and superseded in 1997 by IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*.* In 2003 the International Accounting Standards Board revised IAS 1 as part of the Improvements project and in 2005 the Board amended it as a consequence of issuing IFRS 7 *Financial Instruments: Disclosures*. In 2007 the Board revised IAS 1 again as part of its project on financial statement presentation. This Basis for Conclusions summarises the Board's considerations in reaching its conclusions on revising IAS 1 in 2003, on amending it in 2005 and revising it in 2007. It includes reasons for accepting some approaches and rejecting others. Individual Board members gave greater weight to some factors than to others.

The Improvements project—revision of IAS 1 (2003)

BC2 In July 2001 the Board announced that, as part of its initial agenda of technical projects, it would undertake a project to improve a number of standards, including IAS 1. The project was undertaken in the light of queries and criticisms raised in relation to the standards by securities regulators, professional accountants and other interested parties. The objectives of the Improvements project were to reduce or eliminate alternatives, redundancies and conflicts within standards, to deal with some convergence issues and to make other improvements. The Board's intention was not to reconsider the fundamental approach to the presentation of financial statements established by IAS 1 in 1997.

BC3 In May 2002 the Board published an exposure draft of proposed *Improvements to International Accounting Standards*, which contained proposals to revise IAS 1. The Board received more than 160 comment letters. After considering the responses the Board issued in 2003 a revised version of IAS 1. In its revision the Board's main objectives were:

(a) to provide a framework within which an entity assesses how to present fairly the effects of transactions and other events, and assesses whether the result of complying with a requirement in an IFRS would be so misleading that it would not give a fair presentation;

(b) to base the criteria for classifying liabilities as current or non-current solely on the conditions existing at the balance sheet date;

(c) to prohibit the presentation of items of income and expense as 'extraordinary items';

* IASC did not publish a Basis for Conclusions.

(d) to specify disclosures about the judgements that management has made in the process of applying the entity's accounting policies, apart from those involving estimations, and that have the most significant effect on the amounts recognised in the financial statements; and

(e) to specify disclosures about sources of estimation uncertainty at the balance sheet date that have a significant risk of causing a material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities within the next financial year.

BC4 The following sections summarise the Board's considerations in reaching its conclusions as part of its Improvements project in 2003:

(a) departures from IFRSs (paragraphs BC23–BC30)

(b) criterion for exemption from requirements (paragraphs BC34–BC36)

(c) effect of events after the reporting period on the classification of liabilities (paragraphs BC39–BC48)

(d) results of operating activities (paragraphs BC55 and BC56)

(e) minority interest (paragraph BC59)*

(f) extraordinary items (paragraphs BC60–BC64)

(g) disclosure of the judgements management has made in the process of applying the entity's accounting policies (paragraphs BC77 and BC78)

(h) disclosure of major sources of estimation uncertainty (paragraphs BC79–BC84).

Amendment to IAS 1—*Capital Disclosures* (2005)

BC5 In August 2005 the Board issued an Amendment to IAS 1—*Capital Disclosures*. The amendment added to IAS 1 requirements for disclosure of:

(a) the entity's objectives, policies and processes for managing capital.

(b) quantitative data about what the entity regards as capital.

(c) whether the entity has complied with any capital requirements; and if it has not complied, the consequences of such non-compliance.

BC6 The following sections summarise the Board's considerations in reaching its conclusions as part of its amendment to IAS 1 in 2005:

(a) disclosures about capital (paragraphs BC85–BC89)

(b) objectives, policies and processes for managing capital (paragraphs BC90 and BC91)

(c) externally imposed capital requirements (paragraphs BC92–BC97)

(d) internal capital targets (paragraphs BC98–BC100).

* In January 2008 the IASB issued an amended IAS 27 *Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements*, which amended 'minority interest' to 'non-controlling interests'.

Amendments to IAS 32 and IAS 1—*Puttable Financial Instruments and Obligations Arising on Liquidation* (2008)

BC6A In July 2006 the Board published an exposure draft of proposed amendments to IAS 32 and IAS 1 relating to the classification of puttable instruments and instruments with obligations arising only on liquidation. The Board subsequently confirmed the proposals and in February 2008 issued an amendment that now forms part of IAS 1.

Financial statement presentation—Joint project

BC7 In September 2001 the Board added to its agenda the performance reporting project (in March 2006 renamed the 'financial statement presentation project'). The objective of the project was to enhance the usefulness of information presented in the income statement. The Board developed a possible new model for reporting income and expenses and conducted preliminary testing. Similarly, in the United States, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) added a project on performance reporting to its agenda in October 2001, developed its model and conducted preliminary testing. Constituents raised concerns about both models and about the fact that they were different.

BC8 In April 2004 the Board and the FASB decided to work on financial statement presentation as a joint project. They agreed that the project should address presentation and display not only in the income statement, but also in the other statements that, together with the income statement, would constitute a complete set of financial statements—the balance sheet, the statement of changes in equity, and the cash flow statement. The Board decided to approach the project in two phases. Phase A would address the statements that constitute a complete set of financial statements and the periods for which they are required to be presented. Phase B would be undertaken jointly with the FASB and would address more fundamental issues relating to presentation and display of information in the financial statements, including:

(a) consistent principles for aggregating information in each financial statement.

(b) the totals and subtotals that should be reported in each financial statement.

(c) whether components of other comprehensive income should be reclassified to profit or loss and, if so, the characteristics of the transactions and events that should be reclassified and when reclassification should be made.

(d) whether the direct or the indirect method of presenting operating cash flows provides more useful information.

BC9 In March 2006, as a result of its work in phase A, the Board published an exposure draft of proposed amendments to IAS 1—*A Revised Presentation*. The Board received more than 130 comment letters. The exposure draft proposed amendments that affected the presentation of owner changes in equity and the presentation of comprehensive income, but did not propose to change the recognition, measurement or disclosure of specific transactions and other events required by other IFRSs. It also proposed to bring IAS 1 largely into line with the US standard—SFAS 130 *Reporting Comprehensive Income*. After considering the responses to the exposure draft the Board issued a revised version of IAS 1. The FASB decided to consider phases A and B issues together, and therefore did not publish an exposure draft on phase A.

BC10 The following sections summarise the Board's considerations in reaching its conclusions as part of its revision in 2007:

(a) general purpose financial statements (paragraphs BC11–BC13)

(b) titles of financial statements (paragraphs BC14–BC21)

(c) equal prominence (paragraph BC22)

(d) a statement of financial position as at the beginning of the earliest comparative period (paragraphs BC31 and BC32)

(e) IAS 34 *Interim Financial Reporting* (paragraph BC33)

(f) reporting owner and non-owner changes in equity (paragraphs BC37 and BC38)

(g) reporting comprehensive income (paragraphs BC49–BC54)

(h) subtotal for profit or loss (paragraphs BC57 and BC58)

(i) other comprehensive income-related tax effects (paragraphs BC65– BC68)

(j) reclassification adjustments (paragraphs BC69–BC73)

(k) effects of retrospective application or retrospective restatement (paragraph BC74)

(l) presentation of dividends (paragraph BC75)

(m) IAS 7 *Cash Flow Statements* (paragraph BC76)

(n) presentation of measures per share (paragraphs BC101–BC104)

(o) effective date and transition (paragraph BC105)

(p) differences from SFAS 130 (paragraph BC106).

Definitions

General purpose financial statements (paragraph 7)

BC11 The exposure draft of 2006 proposed a change to the explanatory paragraph of what ‘general purpose financial statements’ include, in order to produce a more generic definition of a set of financial statements. Paragraph 7 of the exposure draft stated:

> General purpose financial statements include those that are presented separately or within other *public* documents such as a *regulatory filing* or report to shareholders. [emphasis added]

BC12 Respondents expressed concern about the proposed change. They argued that it could be understood as defining as general purpose financial statements any financial statement or set of financial statements filed with a regulator and could capture documents other than annual reports and prospectuses. They saw this change as expanding the scope of IAS 1 to documents that previously would not have contained all of the disclosures required by IAS 1. Respondents pointed out that the change would particularly affect some entities (such as small private companies and subsidiaries of public companies with no external users of financial reports) that are required by law to place their financial statements on a public file.

BC13 The Board acknowledged that in some countries the law requires entities, whether public or private, to report to regulatory authorities and include information in those reports that could be beyond the scope of IAS 1. Because the Board did not intend to extend the definition of general purpose financial statements, it decided to eliminate the explanatory paragraph of what ‘general purpose financial statements’ include, while retaining the definition of ‘general purpose financial statements’.

Financial statements

Complete set of financial statements

Titles of financial statements (paragraph 10)

BC14 The exposure draft of 2006 proposed changes to the titles of some of the financial statements—from 'balance sheet' to 'statement of financial position', from 'income statement' to 'statement of profit or loss' and from 'cash flow statement' to 'statement of cash flows'. In addition, the exposure draft proposed a 'statement of recognised income and expense' and that all owner changes in equity should be included in a 'statement of changes in equity'. The Board did not propose to make any of these changes of nomenclature mandatory.

BC15 Many respondents opposed the proposed changes, pointing out that the existing titles had a long tradition and were well understood. However, the Board reaffirmed its view that the proposed new titles better reflect the function of each financial statement, and pointed out that an entity could choose to use other titles in its financial report.

BC16 The Board reaffirmed its conclusion that the title 'statement of financial position' not only better reflects the function of the statement but is consistent with the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, which contains several references to 'financial position'. Paragraph 12 of the *Framework* states that the objective of financial statements is to provide information about the financial position, performance and changes in financial position of an entity; paragraph 19 of the *Framework* states that information about financial position is primarily provided in a balance sheet. In the Board's view, the title 'balance sheet' simply reflects that double entry bookkeeping requires debits to equal credits. It does not identify the content or purpose of the statement. The Board also noted that 'financial position' is a well-known and accepted term, as it has been used in auditors' opinions internationally for more than 20 years to describe what the 'balance sheet' presents. The Board decided that aligning the statement's title with its content and the opinion rendered by the auditor would help the users of financial statements.

BC17 As to the other statements, respondents suggested that renaming the balance sheet the 'statement of financial position' implied that the 'cash flow statement' and the 'statement of recognised income and expense' do not also reflect an entity's financial position. The Board observed that although the latter statements reflect changes in an entity's financial position, neither can be called a 'statement of changes in financial position', as this would not depict their true function and objective (ie to present cash flows and performance, respectively). The Board acknowledged that the titles 'income statement' and 'statement of profit or loss' are similar in meaning and could be used interchangeably, and decided to retain the title 'income statement' as this is more commonly used.

BC18 The title of the proposed new statement, the 'statement of recognised income and expense', reflects a broader content than the former 'income statement'. The statement encompasses both income and expenses recognised in profit or loss and income and expenses recognised outside profit or loss.

BC19 Many respondents opposed the title 'statement of recognised income and expense', objecting particularly to the use of the term 'recognised'. The Board acknowledged that the term 'recognised' could also be used to describe the content of other primary statements as 'recognition', explained in paragraph 82 of the *Framework*, is 'the process of incorporating in the balance sheet or income statement an item that meets the definition of an element and satisfies the criteria for recognition set out in paragraph 83.' Many respondents suggested the term 'statement of comprehensive income' instead.

BC20 In response to respondents' concerns and to converge with SFAS 130, the Board decided to rename the new statement a 'statement of comprehensive income'. The term 'comprehensive income' is not defined in the *Framework* but is used in IAS 1 to describe the change in equity of an entity during a period from transactions, events and circumstances other than those resulting from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners. Although the term 'comprehensive income' is used to describe the aggregate of all components of comprehensive income, including profit or loss, the term 'other comprehensive income' refers to income and expenses that under IFRSs are included in comprehensive income but excluded from profit or loss.

BC21 In finalising its revision, the Board confirmed that the titles of financial statements used in this Standard would not be mandatory. The titles will be used in future IFRSs but are not required to be used by entities in their financial statements. Some respondents to the exposure draft expressed concern that non-mandatory titles will result in confusion. However, the Board believes that making use of the titles non-mandatory will allow time for entities to implement changes gradually as the new titles become more familiar.

Equal prominence (paragraphs 11 and 12)

BC22 The Board noted that the financial performance of an entity is not assessed by reference to a single financial statement or a single measure within a financial statement. The Board believes that the financial performance of an entity can be assessed only after all aspects of the financial statements are taken into account and understood in their entirety. Accordingly, the Board decided that in order to help users of the financial statements to understand the financial performance of an entity comprehensively, all financial statements within the complete set of financial statements should be presented with equal prominence.

Departures from IFRSs (paragraphs 19–24)

BC23 IAS 1 (as issued in 1997) permitted an entity to depart from a requirement in a Standard 'in the extremely rare circumstances when management concludes that compliance with a requirement in a Standard would be misleading, and therefore that departure from a requirement is necessary to achieve a fair presentation' (paragraph 17, now paragraph 19). When such a departure occurred, paragraph 18 (now paragraph 20) required extensive disclosure of the facts and circumstances surrounding the departure and the treatment adopted.

BC24 The Board decided to clarify in paragraph 15 of the Standard that for financial statements to present fairly the financial position, financial performance and cash flows of an entity, they must represent faithfully the effects of transactions and other events in accordance with the definitions and recognition criteria for assets, liabilities, income and expenses set out in the *Framework*.

BC25 The Board decided to limit the occasions on which an entity should depart from a requirement in an IFRS to the extremely rare circumstances in which management concludes that compliance with the requirement would be so misleading that it would conflict with the objective of financial statements set out in the *Framework*. Guidance on this criterion states that an item of information would conflict with the objective of financial statements when it does not represent faithfully the transactions, other events or conditions that it either purports to represent or could reasonably be expected to represent and, consequently, it would be likely to influence economic decisions made by users of financial statements.

BC26 These amendments provide a framework within which an entity assesses how to present fairly the effects of transactions, other events and conditions, and whether the result of complying with a requirement in an IFRS would be so misleading that it would not give a fair presentation.

BC27 The Board considered whether IAS 1 should be silent on departures from IFRSs. The Board decided against making that change, because it would remove the Board's capability to specify the criteria under which departures from IFRSs should occur.

BC28 Departing from a requirement in an IFRS when considered necessary to achieve a fair presentation would conflict with the regulatory framework in some jurisdictions. The revised IAS 1 takes into account the existence of different regulatory requirements. It requires that when an entity's circumstances satisfy the criterion described in paragraph BC25 for departure from a requirement in an IFRS, the entity should proceed as follows:

(a) When the relevant regulatory framework requires—or otherwise does not prohibit—a departure from the requirement, the entity should make that departure and the disclosures set out in paragraph 20.

(b) When the relevant regulatory framework prohibits departure from the requirement, the entity should, to the maximum extent possible, reduce the perceived misleading aspects of compliance by making the disclosures set out in paragraph 23.

This amendment enables entities to comply with the requirements of IAS 1 when the relevant regulatory framework prohibits departures from accounting standards, while retaining the principle that entities should, to the maximum extent possible, ensure that financial statements provide a fair presentation.

BC29 After considering the comments received on the exposure draft of 2002, the Board added to IAS 1 a requirement in paragraph 21 to disclose the effect of a departure from a requirement of an IFRS in a prior period on the current period's financial statements. Without this disclosure, users of the entity's financial statements could be unaware of the continuing effects of prior period departures.

BC30 In view of the strict criteria for departure from a requirement in an IFRS, IAS 1 includes a rebuttable presumption that if other entities in similar circumstances comply with the requirement, the entity's compliance with the requirement would not be so misleading that it would conflict with the objective of financial statements set out in the *Framework*.

Comparative information

A statement of financial position as at the beginning of the earliest comparative period (paragraph 39)

BC31 The exposure draft of 2006 proposed that a statement of financial position as at the beginning of the earliest comparative period should be presented as part of a complete set of financial statements. This statement would provide a basis for investors and creditors to evaluate information about the entity's performance during the period. However, many respondents expressed concern that the requirement would unnecessarily increase disclosures in financial statements, or would be impracticable, excessive and costly.

BC32 By adding a statement of financial position as at the beginning of the earliest comparative period, the exposure draft proposed that an entity should present three statements of financial position and two of each of the other statements. Considering that financial statements from prior years are readily available for financial analysis, the Board decided to require only two statements of financial position, except when the financial statements have been affected by retrospective application or retrospective restatement, as defined in IAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*, or when a reclassification has been made. In those circumstances three statements of financial position are required.

IAS 34 *Interim Financial Reporting*

BC33 The Board decided not to reflect in paragraph 8 of IAS 34 (ie the minimum components of an interim financial report) its decision to require the inclusion of a statement of financial position as at the beginning of the earliest comparative period in a complete set of financial statements. IAS 34 has a year-to-date approach to interim reporting and does not replicate the requirements of IAS 1 in terms of comparative information.

Criterion for exemption from requirements (paragraphs 41–44)

BC34 IAS 1 as issued in 1997 specified that when the presentation or classification of items in the financial statements is amended, comparative amounts should be reclassified unless it is impracticable to do so. Applying a requirement is impracticable when the entity cannot apply it after making every reasonable effort to do so.

BC35 The exposure draft of 2002 proposed a different criterion for exemption from particular requirements. For the reclassification of comparative amounts, and its proposed new requirement to disclose key assumptions and other sources of estimation uncertainty at the end of the reporting period (discussed in paragraphs BC79–BC84), the exposure draft proposed that the criterion for exemption should be that applying the requirements would require undue cost or effort.

BC36 In the light of respondents' comments on the exposure draft, the Board decided that an exemption based on management's assessment of undue cost or effort was too subjective to be applied consistently by different entities. Moreover, balancing costs and benefits was a task for the Board when it sets accounting requirements rather than for entities when they apply them. Therefore, the Board retained the 'impracticability' criterion for exemption. This affects the exemptions now set out in paragraphs 41–43 and 131 of IAS 1. Impracticability is the only basis on which IFRSs allow specific exemptions from applying particular requirements when the effect of applying them is material*.

Reporting owner and non-owner changes in equity

BC37 The exposure draft of 2006 proposed to separate changes in equity of an entity during a period arising from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners (ie all owner changes in equity) from other changes in equity (ie non-owner changes in equity). All owner changes in equity would be presented in the statement of changes in equity, separately from non-owner changes in equity.

BC38 Most respondents welcomed this proposal and saw this change as an improvement of financial reporting, by increasing the transparency of those items recognised in equity that are not reported as part of profit or loss. However, some respondents pointed out that the terms 'owner' and 'non-owner' were not defined in the exposure draft, the *Framework* or elsewhere in IFRSs, although they are extensively used in national accounting standards. They also noted that the terms 'owner' and 'equity holder' were used interchangeably in the exposure draft. The Board decided to adopt the term 'owner' and use it throughout IAS 1 to converge with SFAS 130, which uses the term in the definition of 'comprehensive income'.

Statement of financial position

Current assets and current liabilities (paragraphs 68 and 71)

BC38A As part of its improvements project in 2007, the Board identified inconsistent guidance regarding the current/non-current classification of derivatives. Some might read the guidance included in paragraph 71 as implying that financial liabilities classified as held for trading in accordance with IAS 39 *Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement* are always required to be presented as current.

* In 2006 the IASB issued IFRS 8 *Operating Segments*. As explained in paragraphs BC46 and BC47 of the Basis for Conclusions on IFRS 8, that IFRS includes an exemption from some requirements if the necessary information is not available and the cost to develop it would be excessive.

BC38B The Board expects the criteria set out in paragraph 69 to be used to assess whether a financial liability should be presented as current or non-current. The 'held for trading' category in paragraph 9 of IAS 39 is for measurement purposes and includes financial assets and liabilities that may not be held primarily for trading purposes.

BC38C The Board reaffirmed that if a financial liability is held primarily for trading purposes it should be presented as current regardless of its maturity date. However, a financial liability that is not held for trading purposes, such as a derivative that is not a financial guarantee contract or a designated hedging instrument, should be presented as current or non-current on the basis of its settlement date. For example, derivatives that have a maturity of more than twelve months and are expected to be held for more than twelve months after the reporting period should be presented as non-current assets or liabilities.

BC38D Therefore, the Board decided to remove the identified inconsistency by amending the examples of current liabilities in paragraph 71. The Board also amended paragraph 68 in respect of current assets to remove a similar inconsistency.

Classification of the liability component of a convertible instrument (paragraph 69)

BC38E As part of its improvements project in 2007, the Board considered the classification of the liability component of a convertible instrument as current or non-current. Paragraph 69(d) of IAS 1 states that when an entity does not have an unconditional right to defer settlement of a liability for at least twelve months after the reporting period, the liability should be classified as current. According to the *Framework*, conversion of a liability into equity is a form of settlement.

BC38F The application of these requirements means that if the conversion option can be exercised by the holder at any time, the liability component would be classified as current. This classification would be required even if the entity would not be required to settle unconverted instruments with cash or other assets for more than twelve months after the reporting period.

BC38G IAS 1 and the *Framework* state that information about the liquidity and solvency positions of an entity is useful to users. The terms 'liquidity' and 'solvency' are associated with the availability of cash to an entity. Issuing equity does not result in an outflow of cash or other assets of the entity.

BC38H The Board concluded that classifying the liability on the basis of the requirements to transfer cash or other assets rather than on settlement better reflects the liquidity and solvency position of an entity, and therefore it decided to amend IAS 1 accordingly.

BC38I The Board discussed the comments received in response to its exposure draft of proposed *Improvements to IFRSs* published in 2007 and noted that some respondents were concerned that the proposal in the exposure draft would apply to all liabilities, not just those that are components of convertible instruments as originally contemplated in the exposure draft. Consequently, in *Improvements to IFRSs* issued in April 2009, the Board amended the proposed wording to clarify that the amendment applies only to the classification of a liability that can, at the option of the counterparty, be settled by the issue of the entity's equity instruments.

Effect of events after the reporting period on the classification of liabilities (paragraphs 69–76)

BC39 Paragraph 63 of IAS 1 (as issued in 1997) included the following:

> An enterprise should continue to classify its long-term interest-bearing liabilities as non-current, even when they are due to be settled within twelve months of the balance sheet date if:
>
> (a) the original term was for a period of more than twelve months;
>
> (b) the enterprise intends to refinance the obligation on a long-term basis; and
>
> (c) that intention is supported by an agreement to refinance, or to reschedule payments, which is completed before the financial statements are authorised for issue.

BC40 Paragraph 65 stated:

> Some borrowing agreements incorporate undertakings by the borrower (covenants) which have the effect that the liability becomes payable on demand if certain conditions related to the borrower's financial position are breached. In these circumstances, the liability is classified as non-current only when:
>
> (a) the lender has agreed, prior to the authorisation of the financial statements for issue, not to demand payment as a consequence of the breach; and
>
> (b) it is not probable that further breaches will occur within twelve months of the balance sheet date.

BC41 The Board considered these requirements and concluded that refinancing, or the receipt of a waiver of the lender's right to demand payment, that occurs after the reporting period should not be taken into account in the classification of a liability.

BC42 Therefore, the exposure draft of 2002 proposed:

(a) to amend paragraph 63 to specify that a long-term financial liability due to be settled within twelve months of the balance sheet date should not be classified as a non-current liability because an agreement to refinance, or to reschedule payments, on a long-term basis is completed after the balance sheet date and before the financial statements are authorised for issue. This amendment would not affect the classification of a liability as non-current when the entity has, under the terms of an existing loan facility, the discretion to refinance or roll over its obligations for at least twelve months after the balance sheet date.

(b) to amend paragraph 65 to specify that a long-term financial liability that is payable on demand because the entity breached a condition of its loan agreement should be classified as current at the balance sheet date even if the lender has agreed after the balance sheet date, and before the financial statements are authorised for issue, not to demand payment as a consequence of the breach. However, if the lender has agreed by the balance sheet date to provide a period of grace within which the entity can rectify the breach and during which the lender cannot demand immediate repayment, the liability is classified as non-current if it is due for settlement, without that breach of the loan agreement, at least twelve months after the balance sheet date and:

    (i) the entity rectifies the breach within the period of grace; or

    (ii) when the financial statements are authorised for issue, the period of grace is incomplete and it is probable that the breach will be rectified.

BC43 Some respondents disagreed with these proposals. They advocated classifying a liability as current or non-current according to whether it is expected to use current assets of the entity, rather than strictly on the basis of its date of maturity and whether it is callable at the end of the reporting period. In their view, this would provide more relevant information about the liability's future effect on the timing of the entity's resource flows.

BC44 However, the Board decided that the following arguments for changing paragraphs 63 and 65 were more persuasive:

(a) refinancing a liability after the balance sheet date does not affect the entity's liquidity and solvency *at the balance sheet date*, the reporting of which should reflect contractual arrangements in force on that date. Therefore, it is a non-adjusting event in accordance with IAS 10 *Events after the Balance Sheet Date* and should not affect the presentation of the entity's balance sheet.

(b) it is illogical to adopt a criterion that 'non-current' classification of short-term obligations expected to be rolled over for at least twelve months after the balance sheet date depends on whether the rollover is at the discretion of the entity, and then to provide an exception based on refinancing occurring after the balance sheet date.

(c) in the circumstances set out in paragraph 65, unless the lender has waived its right to demand immediate repayment or granted a period of grace within which the entity may rectify the breach of the loan agreement, the financial condition of the entity at the balance sheet date was that the entity did not hold an absolute right to defer repayment, based on the terms of the loan agreement. The granting of a waiver or a period of grace changes the terms of the loan agreement. Therefore, an entity's receipt from the lender, after the balance sheet date, of a waiver or a period of grace of at least twelve months does not change the nature of the liability to non-current until it occurs.

BC45 IAS 1 now includes the amendments proposed in 2002, with one change. The change relates to the classification of a long-term loan when, at the end of the reporting period, the lender has provided a period of grace within which a breach of the loan agreement can be rectified, and during which period the lender cannot demand immediate repayment of the loan.

BC46 The exposure draft proposed that such a loan should be classified as non-current if it is due for settlement, without the breach, at least twelve months after the balance sheet date and:

(a) the entity rectifies the breach within the period of grace; or

(b) when the financial statements are authorised for issue, the period of grace is incomplete and it is probable that the breach will be rectified.

BC47 After considering respondents' comments, the Board decided that the occurrence or probability of a rectification of a breach after the reporting period is irrelevant to the conditions existing at the end of the reporting period. The revised IAS 1 requires that, for the loan to be classified as non-current, the period of grace must end at least twelve months after the reporting period (see paragraph 75). Therefore, the conditions (a) and (b) in paragraph BC46 are redundant.

BC48 The Board considered arguments that if a period of grace to remedy a breach of a long-term loan agreement is provided before the end of the reporting period, the loan should be classified as non-current regardless of the length of the period of grace. These arguments are based on the view that, at the end of the reporting period, the lender does not have an unconditional legal right to demand repayment before the original maturity date (ie if the entity remedies the breach during the period of grace, it is entitled to repay the loan on the original maturity date). However, the Board concluded that an entity should classify a loan as non-current only if it has an unconditional right to defer settlement of the loan for at least twelve months after the reporting period. This criterion focuses on the legal rights of the entity, rather than those of the lender.

Statement of comprehensive income

Reporting comprehensive income (paragraph 81)

BC49 The exposure draft of 2006 proposed that all non-owner changes in equity should be presented in a single statement or in two statements. In a single-statement presentation, all items of income and expense are presented together. In a two-statement presentation, the first statement ('income statement') presents income and expenses recognised in profit or loss and the second statement ('statement of comprehensive income') begins with profit or loss and presents, in addition, items of income and expense that IFRSs require or permit to be recognised outside profit or loss. Such items include, for example, translation differences related to foreign operations and gains or losses on available-for-sale financial assets. The statement of comprehensive income does not include transactions with owners in their capacity as owners. Such transactions are presented in the statement of changes in equity.

BC50 Respondents to the exposure draft had mixed views about whether the Board should permit a choice of displaying non-owner changes in equity in one statement or two statements. Many respondents agreed with the Board's proposal to maintain the two-statement approach and the single-statement approach as alternatives and a few urged the Board to mandate one of them. However, most respondents preferred the two-statement approach because it distinguishes profit or loss and total comprehensive income; they believe that with the two-statement approach, the 'income statement' remains a primary financial statement. Respondents supported the presentation of two separate statements as a transition measure until the Board develops principles to determine the criteria for inclusion of items in profit or loss or in other comprehensive income.

BC51 The exposure draft of 2006 expressed the Board's preference for a single statement of all non-owner changes in equity. The Board provided several reasons for this preference. All items of non-owner changes in equity meet the definitions of income and expenses in the *Framework*. The *Framework* does not define profit or loss, nor does it provide criteria for distinguishing the characteristics of items that should be included in profit or loss from those items that should be excluded from profit or loss. Therefore, the Board decided that it was conceptually correct for an entity to present all non-owner changes in equity (ie all income and expenses recognised in a period) in a single statement because there are no clear principles or common characteristics that can be used to separate income and expenses into two statements.

BC52 However, in the Board's discussions with interested parties, it was clear that many were strongly opposed to the concept of a single statement. They argued that there would be undue focus on the bottom line of the single statement. In addition, many argued that it was premature for the Board to conclude that presentation of income and expense in a single statement was an improvement in financial reporting without also addressing the other aspects of presentation and display, namely deciding what categories and line items should be presented in a statement of recognised income and expense.

BC53 In the light of these views, although it preferred a single statement, the Board decided that an entity should have the choice of presenting all income and expenses recognised in a period in one statement or in two statements. An entity is prohibited from presenting components of income and expense (ie non-owner changes in equity) in the statement of changes in equity.

BC54 Many respondents disagreed with the Board's preference and thought that a decision at this stage would be premature. In their view the decision about a single-statement or two-statement approach should be subject to further consideration. They urged the Board to address other aspects of presentation and display, namely deciding which categories and line items should be presented in a 'statement of comprehensive income'. The Board reaffirmed its reasons for preferring a single-statement approach and agreed to address other aspects of display and presentation in the next stage of the project.

Results of operating activities

BC55 IAS 1 omits the requirement in the 1997 version to disclose the results of operating activities as a line item in the income statement. 'Operating activities' are not defined in IAS 1, and the Board decided not to require disclosure of an undefined item.

BC56 The Board recognises that an entity may elect to disclose the results of operating activities, or a similar line item, even though this term is not defined. In such cases, the Board notes that the entity should ensure that the amount disclosed is representative of activities that would normally be regarded as 'operating'. In the Board's view, it would be misleading and would impair the comparability of financial statements if items of an operating nature were excluded from the results of operating activities, even if that had been industry practice. For example, it would be inappropriate to exclude items clearly related to operations (such as inventory write-downs and restructuring and relocation expenses) because they occur irregularly or infrequently or are unusual in amount. Similarly, it would be inappropriate to exclude items on the grounds that they do not involve cash flows, such as depreciation and amortisation expenses.

Subtotal for profit or loss (paragraph 82)

BC57 As revised, IAS 1 requires a subtotal for profit or loss in the statement of comprehensive income. If an entity chooses to present comprehensive income by using two statements, it should begin the second statement with profit or loss—the bottom line of the first statement (the 'income statement')—and display the components of other comprehensive income immediately after that. The Board concluded that this is the best way to achieve the objective of equal prominence (see paragraph BC22) for the presentation of income and expenses. An entity that chooses to display comprehensive income in one statement should include profit or loss as a subtotal within that statement.

BC58 The Board acknowledged that the items included in profit or loss do not possess any unique characteristics that allow them to be distinguished from items that are included in other comprehensive income. However, the Board and its predecessor have required some items to be recognized outside profit or loss. The Board will deliberate in the next stage of the project how items of income and expense should be presented in the statement of comprehensive income.

Minority interest (paragraph 83)*

BC59 IAS 1 requires the 'profit or loss attributable to minority interest' and 'profit or loss attributable to owners of the parent' each to be presented in the income statement in accordance with paragraph 83. These amounts are to be presented as allocations of profit or loss, not as items of income or expense. A similar requirement has been added for the statement of changes in equity, in paragraph 106(a). These changes are consistent with IAS 27 *Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements*, which requires that in a consolidated balance sheet (now called 'statement of financial position'), minority interest is presented within equity because it does not meet the definition of a liability in the *Framework*.

* In January 2008 the IASB issued an amended IAS 27 *Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements*, which amended 'minority interest' to 'non-controlling interests'.

Extraordinary items (paragraph 87)

BC60 IAS 8 *Net Profit or Loss for the Period, Fundamental Errors and Changes in Accounting Policies* (issued in 1993) required extraordinary items to be disclosed in the income statement separately from the profit or loss from ordinary activities. That standard defined 'extraordinary items' as 'income or expenses that arise from events or transactions that are clearly distinct from the ordinary activities of the enterprise and therefore are not expected to recur frequently or regularly'.

BC61 In 2002, the Board decided to eliminate the concept of extraordinary items from IAS 8 and to prohibit the presentation of items of income and expense as 'extraordinary items' in the income statement and the notes. Therefore, in accordance with IAS 1, no items of income and expense are to be presented as arising from outside the entity's ordinary activities.

BC62 Some respondents to the exposure draft of 2002 argued that extraordinary items should be presented in a separate component of the income statement because they are clearly distinct from all of the other items of income and expense, and because such presentation highlights to users of financial statements the items of income and expense to which the least attention should be given when predicting an entity's future performance.

BC63 The Board decided that items treated as extraordinary result from the normal business risks faced by an entity and do not warrant presentation in a separate component of the income statement. The nature or function of a transaction or other event, rather than its frequency, should determine its presentation within the income statement. Items currently classified as 'extraordinary' are only a subset of the items of income and expense that may warrant disclosure to assist users in predicting an entity's future performance.

BC64 Eliminating the category of extraordinary items eliminates the need for arbitrary segregation of the effects of related external events—some recurring and others not—on the profit or loss of an entity for a period. For example, arbitrary allocations would have been necessary to estimate the financial effect of an earthquake on an entity's profit or loss if it occurs during a major cyclical downturn in economic activity. In addition, paragraph 97 of IAS 1 requires disclosure of the nature and amount of material items of income and expense.

Other comprehensive income—related tax effects (paragraphs 90 and 91)

BC65 The exposure draft of 2006 proposed to allow components of 'other recognised income and expense' (now 'other comprehensive income') to be presented before tax effects ('gross presentation') or after their related tax effects ('net presentation'). The 'gross presentation' facilitated the traceability of other comprehensive income items to profit or loss, because items of profit or loss are generally displayed before tax. The 'net presentation' facilitated the identification of other comprehensive income Items in the equity section of the statement of financial position. A majority of respondents supported allowing both approaches. The Board reaffirmed its conclusion that components of other comprehensive income could be displayed either (a) net of related tax effects or (b) before related tax effects.

BC66 Regardless of whether a pre-tax or post-tax display was used, the exposure draft proposed to require disclosure of the amount of income tax expense or benefit allocated separately to individual components of other comprehensive income, in line with SFAS 130. Many respondents agreed in principle with this disclosure, because they agreed that it helped to improve the clarity and transparency of such information, particularly when components of other comprehensive income are taxed at rates different from those applied to profit or loss.

BC67 However, most respondents expressed concern about having to trace the tax effect for each one of the components of other comprehensive income. Several observed that the tax allocation process is arbitrary (eg it may involve the application of subjectively determined tax rates) and some pointed out that this information is not readily available for some industries (eg the insurance sector), where components of other comprehensive income are multiple and tax allocation involves a high degree of subjectivity. Others commented that they did not understand why tax should be attributed to components of comprehensive income line by line, when this is not a requirement for items in profit or loss.

BC68 The Board decided to maintain the disclosure of income tax expense or benefit allocated to each component of other comprehensive income. Users of financial statements often requested further information on tax amounts relating to components of other comprehensive income, because tax rates often differed from those applied to profit or loss. The Board also observed that an entity should have such tax information available and that a disclosure requirement would therefore not involve additional cost for preparers of financial statements.

Reclassification adjustments (paragraphs 92–96)

BC69 In the exposure draft of 2006, the Board proposed that an entity should separately present reclassification adjustments. These adjustments are the amounts reclassified to profit or loss in the current period that were previously recognised in other comprehensive income. The Board decided that adjustments necessary to avoid double-counting items in total comprehensive income when those items are reclassified to profit or loss in accordance with IFRSs. The Board's view was that separate presentation of reclassification adjustments is essential to inform users of those amounts that are included as income and expenses in different periods—as income or expenses in other comprehensive income in previous periods and as income or expenses in profit or loss in the current period. Without such information, users may find it difficult to assess the effect of reclassifications on profit or loss and to calculate the overall gain or loss associated with available-for-sale financial assets, cash flow hedges and on translation or disposal of foreign operations.

BC70 Most respondents agreed with the Board's decision and believe that the disclosure of reclassification adjustments is important to understanding how components recognised in profit or loss are related to other items recognised in equity in two different periods. However, some respondents suggested that the Board should use the term 'recycling', rather than 'reclassification' as the former term is more common. The Board concluded that both terms are similar in meaning, but decided to use the term 'reclassification adjustment' to converge with the terminology used in SFAS 130.

BC71 The exposure draft proposed to allow the presentation of reclassification adjustments in the statement of recognised income and expense (now 'statement of comprehensive income') or in the notes. Most respondents supported this approach.

BC72 Some respondents noted some inconsistencies in the definition of 'reclassification adjustments' in the exposure draft (now paragraphs 7 and 93 of IAS 1). Respondents suggested that the Board should expand the definition in paragraph 7 to include gains and losses recognised in current periods in addition to those recognised in earlier periods, to make the definition consistent with paragraph 93. They commented that, without clarification, there could be differences between interim and annual reporting, for reclassifications of items that arise in one interim period and reverse out in a different interim period within the same annual period.

BC73 The Board decided to align the definition of reclassification adjustments with SFAS 130 and include an additional reference to 'current periods' in paragraph 7.

Statement of changes in equity

Effects of retrospective application or retrospective restatement (paragraph 106(b))

BC74 Some respondents to the exposure draft of 2006 asked the Board to clarify whether the effects of retrospective application or retrospective restatement, as defined in IAS 8, should be regarded as non-owner changes in equity. The Board noted that IAS 1 specifies that these effects are included in the statement of changes in equity. However, the Board decided to clarify that the effects of retrospective application or retrospective restatement are not changes in equity in the period, but provide a reconciliation between the previous period's closing balance and the opening balance in the statement of changes in equity.

Reconciliation for each component of other comprehensive income (paragraphs 106(d)(ii) and 106A)

BC74A Paragraph 106(d) requires an entity to provide a reconciliation of changes in each component of equity. In *Improvements to IFRSs* issued in May 2010, the Board clarified that entities may present the required reconciliations for each component of other comprehensive income either in the statement of changes in equity or in the notes to the financial statements.

Presentation of dividends (paragraph 107)

BC75 The Board reaffirmed its conclusion to require the presentation of dividends in the statement of changes in equity or in the notes, because dividends are distributions to owners in their capacity as owners and the statement of changes in equity presents all owner changes in equity. The Board concluded that an entity should not present dividends in the statement of comprehensive income because that statement presents non-owner changes in equity.

Statement of cash flows

IAS 7 *Cash Flow Statements* (paragraph 111)

BC76 The Board considered whether the operating section of an indirect method statement of cash flows should begin with total comprehensive income instead of profit or loss as is required by IAS 7 *Cash Flow Statements*. When components of other comprehensive income are non-cash items, they would become reconciling items in arriving at cash flows from operating activities and would add items to the statement of cash flows without adding information content. The Board concluded that an amendment to IAS 7 is not required; however, as mentioned in paragraph BC14 the Board decided to relabel this financial statement as 'statement of cash flows'.

Notes

Disclosure of the judgements that management has made in the process of applying the entity's accounting policies (paragraphs 122–124)

BC77 The revised IAS 1 requires disclosure of the judgements, apart from those involving estimations, that management has made in the process of applying the entity's accounting policies and that have the most significant effect on the amounts recognised in the financial statements (see paragraph 122). An example of these judgements is how management determines whether financial assets are held-to-maturity investments. The Board decided that disclosure of the most important of these judgements would enable users of financial statements to understand better how the accounting policies are applied and to make comparisons between entities regarding the basis on which managements make these judgements.

BC78 Comments received on the exposure draft of 2002 indicated that the purpose of the proposed disclosure was unclear. Accordingly, the Board amended the disclosure explicitly to exclude judgements involving estimations (which are the subject of the disclosure in paragraph 125) and added another four examples of the types of judgements disclosed (see paragraphs 123 and 124).

Disclosure of major sources of estimation uncertainty (paragraphs 125–133)

BC79 IAS 1 requires disclosure of the assumptions concerning the future, and other major sources of estimation uncertainty at the end of the reporting period, that have a significant risk of causing a material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities within the next financial year. For those assets and liabilities, the proposed disclosures include details of:

(a) their nature, and

(b) their carrying amount as at the end of the reporting period (see paragraph 125).

BC80 Determining the carrying amounts of some assets and liabilities requires estimation of the effects of uncertain future events on those assets and liabilities at the end of the reporting period. For example, in the absence of recently observed market prices used to measure the following assets and liabilities, future-oriented estimates are necessary to measure the recoverable amount of classes of property, plant and equipment, the effect of technological obsolescence of inventories, provisions subject to the future outcome of litigation in progress, and long-term employee benefit liabilities such as pension obligations. These estimates involve assumptions about items such as the risk adjustment to cash flows or discount rates used, future changes in salaries and future changes in prices affecting other costs. No matter how diligently an entity estimates the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities subject to significant estimation uncertainty at the end of the reporting period, the reporting of point estimates in the statement of financial position cannot provide information about the estimation uncertainties involved in measuring those assets and liabilities and the implications of those uncertainties for the period's profit or loss.

BC81 The *Framework* states that 'The economic decisions that are made by users of financial statements require an evaluation of the ability of an entity to generate cash and cash equivalents and of the timing and certainty of their generation.' The Board decided that disclosure of information about assumptions and other major sources of estimation uncertainty at the end of the reporting period enhances the relevance, reliability and understandability of the information reported in financial statements. These assumptions and other sources of estimation uncertainty relate to estimates that require management's most difficult, subjective or complex judgements. Therefore, disclosure in accordance with paragraph 125 of the revised IAS 1 would be made in respect of relatively few assets or liabilities (or classes of them).

BC82 The exposure draft of 2002 proposed the disclosure of some 'sources of measurement uncertainty'. In the light of comments received that the purpose of this disclosure was unclear, the Board decided:

(a) to amend the subject of that disclosure to 'sources of estimation uncertainty at the end of the reporting period', and

(b) to clarify in the revised Standard that the disclosure does not apply to assets and liabilities measured at fair value based on recently observed market prices (see paragraph 128 of IAS 1).

BC83 When assets and liabilities are measured at fair value on the basis of recently observed market prices, future changes in carrying amounts would not result from using estimates to measure the assets and liabilities at the end of the reporting period. Using observed market prices to measure assets or liabilities obviates the need for estimates at the end of the reporting period. The market prices properly reflect the fair values at the end of the reporting period, even though future market prices could be different. The objective of fair value measurement is to reflect fair value at the measurement date, not to predict a future value.

BC84 IAS 1 does not prescribe the particular form or detail of the disclosures. Circumstances differ from entity to entity, and the nature of estimation uncertainty at the end of the reporting period has many facets. IAS 1 limits the scope of the disclosures to items that have a significant risk of causing a material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities within the next financial year. The longer the future period to which the disclosures relate, the greater the range of items that would qualify for disclosure, and the less specific are the disclosures that could be made about particular assets or liabilities. A period longer than the next financial year might obscure the most relevant information with other disclosures.

Disclosures about capital (paragraphs 134 and 135)

BC85 In July 2004 the Board published an exposure draft—ED 7 *Financial Instruments: Disclosures*. As part of that project, the Board considered whether it should require disclosures about capital.

BC86 The level of an entity's capital and how it manages capital are important factors for users to consider in assessing the risk profile of an entity and its ability to withstand unexpected adverse events. The level of capital might also affect the entity's ability to pay dividends. Consequently, ED 7 proposed disclosures about capital.

BC87 In ED 7 the Board decided that it should not limit the requirements for disclosures about capital to entities that are subject to external capital requirements (eg regulatory capital requirements established by legislation or other regulation). The Board believes that information about capital is useful for all entities, as is evidenced by the fact that some entities set internal capital requirements and norms have been established for some industries. The Board noted that the capital disclosures are not intended to replace disclosures required by regulators. The Board also noted that the financial statements should not be regarded as a substitute for disclosures to regulators (which may not be available to all users) because the function of disclosures made to regulators may differ from the function of those to other users. Therefore, the Board decided that information about capital should be required of all entities because it is useful to users of general purpose financial statements. Accordingly, the Board did not distinguish between the requirements for regulated and non-regulated entities.

BC88 Some respondents to ED 7 questioned the relevance of the capital disclosures in an IFRS dealing with disclosures relating to financial instruments. The Board noted that an entity's capital does not relate solely to financial instruments and, thus, capital disclosures have more general relevance. Accordingly, the Board included these disclosures in IAS 1, rather than IFRS 7 *Financial Instruments: Disclosures*, the IFRS resulting from ED 7.

BC89 The Board also decided that an entity's decision to adopt the amendments to IAS 1 should be independent of the entity's decision to adopt IFRS 7. The Board noted that issuing a separate amendment facilitates separate adoption decisions.

Objectives, policies and processes for managing capital (paragraph 136)

BC90 The Board decided that disclosure about capital should be placed in the context of a discussion of the entity's objectives, policies and processes for managing capital. This is because the Board believes that such a discussion both communicates important information about the entity's capital strategy and provides the context for other disclosures.

BC91 The Board considered whether an entity can have a view of capital that differs from what IFRSs define as equity. The Board noted that, although for the purposes of this disclosure capital would often equate with equity as defined in IFRSs, it might also include or exclude some components. The Board also noted that this disclosure is intended to give entities the opportunity to describe how they view the components of capital they manage, if this is different from what IFRSs define as equity.

Externally imposed capital requirements (paragraph 136)

BC92 The Board considered whether it should require disclosure of any externally imposed capital requirements. Such a capital requirement could be:

(a) an industry-wide requirement with which all entities in the industry must comply; or

(b) an entity-specific requirement imposed on a particular entity by its prudential supervisor or other regulator.

BC93 The Board noted that some industries and countries have industry-wide capital requirements, and others do not. Thus, the Board concluded that it should not require disclosure of industry-wide requirements, or compliance with such requirements, because such disclosure would not lead to comparability between different entities or between similar entities in different countries.

BC94 The Board concluded that disclosure of the existence and level of entity-specific capital requirements is important information for users, because it informs them about the risk assessment of the regulator. Such disclosure improves transparency and market discipline.

BC95 However, the Board noted the following arguments against requiring disclosure of externally imposed entity-specific capital requirements.

(a) Users of financial statements might rely primarily on the regulator's assessment of solvency risk without making their own risk assessment.

(b) The focus of a regulator's risk assessment is for those whose interests the regulations are intended to protect (eg depositors or policyholders). This emphasis is different from that of a shareholder. Thus, it could be misleading to suggest that the regulator's risk assessment could, or should, be a substitute for independent analysis by investors.

(c) The disclosure of entity-specific capital requirements imposed by a regulator might undermine that regulator's ability to impose such requirements. For example, the information could cause depositors to withdraw funds, a prospect that might discourage regulators from imposing requirements. Furthermore, an entity's regulatory dialogue would become public, which might not be appropriate in all circumstances.

(d) Because different regulators have different tools available, for example formal requirements and moral suasion, a requirement to disclose entity-specific capital requirements could not be framed in a way that would lead to the provision of information that is comparable across entities.

(e) Disclosure of capital requirements (and hence, regulatory judgements) could hamper clear communication to the entity of the regulator's assessment by creating incentives to use moral suasion and other informal mechanisms.

(f) Disclosure requirements should not focus on entity-specific capital requirements in isolation, but should focus on how entity-specific capital requirements affect how an entity manages and determines the adequacy of its capital resources.

(g) A requirement to disclose entity-specific capital requirements imposed by a regulator is not part of Pillar 3 of the Basel II Framework developed by the Basel Committee on Banking Supervision.

BC96 Taking into account all of the above arguments, the Board decided not to require quantitative disclosure of externally imposed capital requirements. Rather, it decided to require disclosures about whether the entity complied with any externally imposed capital requirements during the period and, if not, the consequences of non-compliance. This retains confidentiality between regulators and the entity, but alerts users to breaches of capital requirements and their consequences.

BC97 Some respondents to ED 7 did not agree that breaches of externally imposed capital requirements should be disclosed. They argued that disclosure about breaches of externally imposed capital requirements and the associated regulatory measures subsequently imposed could be disproportionately damaging to entities. The Board was not persuaded by these arguments because it believes that such concerns indicate that information about breaches of externally imposed capital requirements may often be material by its nature. The *Framework* states that 'Information is material if its omission or misstatement could influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of the financial statements.' Similarly, the Board decided not to provide an exemption for temporary non-compliance with regulatory requirements during the year. Information that an entity is sufficiently close to its limits to breach them, even on a temporary basis, is useful for users.

Internal capital targets

BC98 The Board proposed in ED 7 that the requirement to disclose information about breaches of capital requirements should apply equally to breaches of internally imposed requirements, because it believed the information is also useful to a user of the financial statements.

BC99 However, this proposal was criticised by respondents to ED 7 for the following reasons:

(a) The information is subjective and, thus, not comparable between entities. In particular, different entities will set internal targets for different reasons, so a breach of a requirement might signify different things for different entities. In contrast, a breach of an external requirement has similar implications for all entities required to comply with similar requirements.

(b) Capital targets are not more important than other internally set financial targets, and to require disclosure only of capital targets would provide users with incomplete, and perhaps misleading, information.

(c) Internal targets are estimates that are subject to change by the entity. It is not appropriate to require the entity's performance against this benchmark to be disclosed.

(d) An internally set capital target can be manipulated by management. The disclosure requirement could cause management to set the target so that it would always be achieved, providing little useful information to users and potentially reducing the effectiveness of the entity's capital management.

BC100 As a result, the Board decided not to require disclosure of the capital targets set by management, whether the entity has complied with those targets, or the consequences of any non-compliance. However, the Board confirmed its view that when an entity has policies and processes for managing capital, qualitative disclosures about these policies and processes are useful. The Board also concluded that these disclosures, together with disclosure of the components of equity and their changes during the year (required by paragraphs 106–110), would give sufficient information about entities that are not regulated or subject to externally imposed capital requirements.

Puttable financial instruments and obligations arising on liquidation

BC100A The Board decided to require disclosure of information about puttable instruments and instruments that impose on the entity an obligation to deliver to another party a pro rata share of the net assets of the entity only on liquidation that are reclassified in accordance with paragraphs 16E and 16F of IAS 32. This is because the Board concluded that this disclosure allows users of financial statements to understand the effects of any reclassifications.

BC100B The Board also concluded that entities with puttable financial instruments classified as equity should be required to disclose additional information to allow users to assess any effect on the entity's liquidity arising from the ability of the holder to put the instruments to the issuer. Financial instruments classified as equity usually do not include any obligation for the entity to deliver a financial asset to another party. Therefore, the Board concluded that additional disclosures are needed in these circumstances. In particular, the Board concluded that entities should disclose the expected cash outflow on redemption or repurchase of those financial instruments that are classified as equity and information about how that amount was determined. That information allows liquidity risk associated with the put obligation and future cash flows to be evaluated.

Presentation of measures per share

BC101 The exposure draft of 2006 did not propose to change the requirements of IAS 33 *Earnings per Share* on the presentation of basic and diluted earnings per share. A majority of respondents agreed with this decision. In their opinion, earnings per share should be the only measure per share permitted or required in the statement of comprehensive income and changing those requirements was beyond the scope of this stage of the financial statement presentation project.

BC102 However, some respondents would like to see alternative measures per share whenever earnings per share is not viewed as the most relevant measure for financial analysts (ie credit rating agencies that focus on other measures). A few respondents proposed that an entity should also display an amount per share for total comprehensive income, because this was considered a useful measure. The Board did not support including alternative measures per share in the financial statements, until totals and subtotals, and principles for aggregating and disaggregating items, are addressed and discussed as part of the next stage of the financial statement presentation project.

BC103 Some respondents also interpreted the current provisions in IAS 33 as allowing de facto a display of alternative measures in the income statement. In its deliberations, the Board was clear that paragraph 73 of IAS 33 did not leave room for confusion. However, it decided that the wording in paragraph 73 could be improved to clarify that alternative measures should be shown 'only in the notes'. This will be done when IAS 33 is revisited or as part of the annual improvements process.

BC104 One respondent commented that the use of the word 'earnings' was inappropriate in the light of changes proposed in the exposure draft and that the measure should be denominated 'profit or loss per share', instead. The Board considered that this particular change in terminology was beyond the scope of IAS 1.

Transition and effective date

BC105 The Board is committed to maintaining a 'stable platform' of substantially unchanged standards for annual periods beginning between 1 January 2006 and 31 December 2008. In addition, some preparers will need time to make the system changes necessary to comply with the revisions to IAS 1. Therefore, the Board decided that the effective date of IAS 1 should be annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009, with earlier application permitted.

Differences from SFAS 130

BC106 In developing IAS 1, the Board identified the following differences from SFAS 130:

(a) **Reporting and display of comprehensive income** Paragraph 22 of SFAS 130 permits a choice of displaying comprehensive income and its components, in one or two statements of financial performance or in a statement of changes in equity. IAS 1 (as revised in 2007) does not permit display in a statement of changes in equity.

(b) **Reporting other comprehensive income in the equity section of a statement of financial position** Paragraph 26 of SFAS 130 specifically states that the *total of other comprehensive income* is reported separately from retained earnings and additional paid-in capital in a statement of financial position at the end of the period. A descriptive title such as *accumulated other comprehensive income* is used for that component of equity. An entity discloses accumulated balances for each classification in that separate component of equity in a statement of financial position, in a statement of changes in equity, or in notes to the financial statements. IAS 1 (as revised in 2007) does not specifically require the display of a total of accumulated other comprehensive income in the statement of financial position.

(c) **Display of the share of other comprehensive income items of associates and joint ventures accounted for using the equity method** Paragraph 82 of IAS 1 (as revised in 2007) requires the display in the statement of comprehensive income of the investor's share of the investee's other comprehensive income. Paragraph 122 of SFAS 130 does not specify how that information should be displayed. An investor is permitted to combine its proportionate share of other comprehensive income amounts with its own other comprehensive income items and display the aggregate of those amounts in an income statement type format or in a statement of changes in equity.

Appendix
Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on other HKFRSs

This appendix contains amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on other IFRSs that are necessary in order to ensure consistency with the revised IAS 1. Amended paragraphs are shown with the new text underlined and deleted text struck through.

****

The amendments contained in this appendix when this Standard was revised in 2007 have been incorporated into the relevant pronouncements.

Dissenting opinions on IAS 1

Dissent of Mary E Barth, Anthony T Cope, Robert P Garnett and James J Leisenring from IAS 1 (as revised in September 2007)

DO1 Professor Barth and Messrs Cope, Garnett and Leisenring voted against the issue of IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* in 2007. The reasons for their dissent are set out below.

DO2 Those Board members agree with the requirement to report all items of income and expense separately from changes in net assets that arise from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners. Making that distinction clearly is a significant improvement in financial reporting.

DO3 However, they believe that the decision to permit entities to divide the statement of comprehensive income into two separate statements is both conceptually unsound and unwise.

DO4 As noted in paragraph BC51, the *Framework*[*] does not define profit or loss, or net income. It also does not indicate what criteria should be used to distinguish between those items of recognised income and expense that should be included in profit or loss and those items that should not. In some cases, it is even possible for identical transactions to be reported inside or outside profit or loss. Indeed, in that same paragraph, the Board acknowledges these facts, and indicates that it had a preference for reporting all items of income and expense in a single statement, believing that a single statement is the conceptually correct approach. Those Board members believe that some items of income and expense that will potentially bypass the statement of profit and loss can be as significant to the assessment of an entity's performance as items that will be included. Until a conceptual distinction can be developed to determine whether any items should be reported in profit or loss or elsewhere, financial statements will lack neutrality and comparability unless all items are reported in a single statement. In such a statement, profit or loss can be shown as a subtotal, reflecting current conventions.

DO5 In the light of those considerations, it is puzzling that most respondents to the exposure draft that proposed these amendments favoured permitting a two-statement approach, reasoning that it 'distinguishes between profit and loss and total comprehensive income' (paragraph BC50). Distinguishing between those items reported in profit or loss and those reported elsewhere is accomplished by the requirement for relevant subtotals to be included in a statement of comprehensive income. Respondents also stated that a two-statement approach gives primacy to the 'income statement'; that conflicts with the Board's requirement in paragraph 11 of IAS 1 to give equal prominence to all financial statements within a set of financial statements.

DO6 Those Board members also believe that the amendments are flawed by offering entities a choice of presentation methods. The Board has expressed a desire to reduce alternatives in IFRSs. The *Preface to International Financial Reporting Standards*, in paragraph 13, states: 'the IASB intends not to permit choices in accounting treatment … and will continue to reconsider … those transactions and events for which IASs permit a choice of accounting treatment, with the objective of reducing the number of those choices.' The *Preface* extends this objective to both accounting and reporting. The same paragraph states: 'The IASB's objective is to require like transactions and events to be accounted for *and reported* in a like way and unlike transactions and events to be accounted for *and reported* differently' (emphasis added). By permitting a choice in this instance, the IASB has abandoned that principle.

DO7 Finally, the four Board members believe that allowing a choice of presentation at this time will ingrain practice, and make achievement of the conceptually correct presentation more difficult as the long-term project on financial statement presentation proceeds.

[*] The reference to the *Framework* is to IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB in 2001. In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.

Appendix

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 1 *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* – effective for annual periods beginning on or after 1 July 2012

The following sets out amendments required for this Basis for Conclusions resulting from amendments to HKAS 1 that are not yet effective. Once effective, the amendments set out below will be incorporated into the text of this Basis for Conclusions and this appendix will be deleted. In the amended paragraphs shown below, new text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*

After paragraph BC6A, a heading and paragraph BC6B are added. Paragraphs BC20A and BC20B, BC54A–BC54J, BC68A, BC105A and BC105B are added.

Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income (Amendments to IAS 1)

BC6B In May 2010 the Board published an exposure draft of proposed amendments to IAS 1 relating to the presentation of items of other comprehensive income (OCI). The Board subsequently modified and confirmed the proposals and in June 2011 issued *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (Amendments to IAS 1). The amendments were developed in a joint project with the US national standard-setter, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), with the aim of aligning the presentation of OCI so that information in financial statements prepared by entities using IFRSs and entities using US generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) can be more easily compared.

BC20A In May 2010 the Board published the exposure draft *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* (proposed amendments to IAS 1) relating to the presentation of items of other comprehensive income (OCI). One of the proposals in the exposure draft related to the title of the statement containing profit or loss and other comprehensive income. The Board proposed this change so that it would be clear that the statement had two components: profit or loss and other comprehensive income. A majority of the respondents to the exposure draft supported the change and therefore the Board confirmed the proposal in June 2011. IAS 1 allows preparers to use other titles for the statement that reflect the nature of their activities.

BC20B Several other IFRSs refer to the 'statement of comprehensive income'. The Board considered whether it should change all such references to 'statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income'. The Board noted that the terminology used in IAS 1 is not mandatory and that 'statement of comprehensive income' is one of the examples used in the standard. The Board decided that there was little benefit in replacing the title 'statement of comprehensive income' in other IFRSs or 'income statement' with the 'statement of profit or loss'. However, the Board did change the terminology when an IFRS made reference to the two-statement option.

BC54A In *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* published in May 2010 the Board proposed to eliminate the option to present all items of income and expense recognised in a period in two statements, thereby requiring presentation in a continuous statement displaying two sections: *profit or loss* and *other comprehensive income*. The Board also proposed to require items of OCI to be classified into items that might be reclassified (recycled) to profit or loss in subsequent periods and items that would not be reclassified subsequently.

BC54B In its deliberations on financial instruments and pensions the Board discussed the increasing importance of consistent presentation of items of OCI. Both projects will increase the number of items presented in OCI, particularly items that will not be reclassified subsequently to profit or loss. Therefore the Board thought it important that all income and expenses that are components of the total non-owner changes in equity should be presented transparently.

BC54C The Board has no plans to eliminate profit or loss as a measure of performance. Profit or loss will be presented separately and will remain the required starting point for the calculation of earnings per share.

BC54D The Board had previously received responses to similar proposals for a single statement of comprehensive income. In October 2008 the Board and the FASB jointly published a discussion paper, *Preliminary Views on Financial Statement Presentation*. In that paper, the boards proposed eliminating the alternative presentation formats for comprehensive income and to require an entity to present comprehensive income and its components in a single statement. The boards asked for views on that proposal. The responses were split on whether an entity should present comprehensive income and its components in a single statement or in two separate statements. In general, respondents supporting a single statement of comprehensive income said that it would lead to greater transparency, consistency and comparability. Furthermore, the process of calculating financial ratios would be made easier.

BC54E Respondents disagreeing with the proposal for a single statement of comprehensive income urged the boards to defer any changes to the guidance on the statement of comprehensive income until the boards had completed a project to revise the guidance on what items should be presented in OCI. Those respondents also said that a single statement would undermine the importance of profit or loss by making it a subtotal and that presenting total comprehensive income as the last number in the statement would confuse users. They also feared that requiring all items of income and expense to be presented in a single statement was the first step by the boards towards eliminating the notion of profit or loss. In addition, they argued that the items that are presented in OCI are different from items presented in profit or loss. Therefore they preferred either to keep the presentation of profit or loss separate from the presentation of OCI or to allow management to choose to present them either in a single statement or in two statements.

BC54F In the responses to the exposure draft of May 2010 many of the respondents objected to the proposals to remove the option to present all items of income and expense in two statements. The arguments used by those objecting were much the same as those received on the discussion paper. However, many respondents, regardless of their views on the proposed amendments, said that the Board should establish a conceptual basis for what should be presented in OCI. Those opposed to a continuous statement cited OCI's lack of a conceptual definition and therefore believed that OCI should not be presented in close proximity to profit or loss because this would confuse users. However, users generally said that the lack of a conceptual framework made it difficult to distinguish the underlying economics of items reported in profit or loss (net income) from items reported in other comprehensive income. Although users also asked for a conceptual framework for OCI, most supported the notion of a single statement of comprehensive income.

BC54G Another issue on which many respondents commented was the reclassification (recycling) of OCI items. Those respondents said that in addition to addressing the conceptual basis for the split between profit or loss and OCI the Board should set principles for which OCI items should be reclassified (recycled) to profit or loss and when they should be reclassified. The Board acknowledges that it has not set out a conceptual basis for how it determines whether an item should be presented in OCI or in profit or loss. It also agrees that it has not set out principles to determine whether items should be reclassified to profit or loss. Those matters were not within the scope of this project, which focused on presentation, and therefore the Board has not addressed them at this time. However, the Board is consulting on its future agenda, which could lead to those matters becoming part of the work programme.

BC54H In the light of the response the Board confirmed in June 2011 the requirement for items of OCI to be classified into items that will not be reclassified (recycled) to profit or loss in subsequent periods and items that might be reclassified.

BC54I The Board also decided not to mandate the presentation of profit or loss in a continuous statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income but to maintain an option to present two statements. The Board did this in the light of the negative response to its proposal for a continuous statement and the resistance to this change signified by a majority of respondents.

BC54J The FASB also proposed in its exposure draft to mandate a continuous statement of comprehensive income but decided in the light of the responses not to go as far as mandating a single statement and instead to allow the two-statement option. Nevertheless, the changes made by the FASB are a significant improvement for US GAAP, which previously allowed an option to present OCI items in stockholders' equity or in the notes to the financial statements.

BC68A In its exposure draft *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* published in May 2010 the Board proposed requiring that income tax on items presented in OCI should be allocated between items that will not be subsequently reclassified to profit or loss and those that might be reclassified, if the items in OCI are presented before tax. Most respondents agreed with this proposal as this would be in line with the existing options in IAS 1 regarding presentation of income tax on OCI items. Therefore the Board confirmed the proposal in June 2011.

BC105A The exposure draft *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* published in May 2010 proposed changes to presentation of items of OCI. The Board finalised these changes in June 2011 and decided that the effective dates for these changes should be for annual periods beginning on or after 1 July 2012, with earlier application permitted. The Board did not think that a long transition period was needed as the changes to presentation are small and the presentation required by the amendments is already allowed under IAS 1.

BC105B The Board had consulted on the effective date and transition requirements for this amendment in its *Request for Views on Effective Dates and Transition Requirements* in October 2010 and the responses to that document did not give the Board any reason to reconsider the effective date and the transition requirements.

Dissenting opinion on amendments issued in June 2011

Dissent of Paul Pacter

DO1 Mr Pacter voted against issuing the amendments to IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* set out in *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income* in June 2011. Mr Pacter believes that the Board has missed a golden opportunity to align the performance statement with the Board's *Conceptual Framework* and, thereby, improve information for users of IFRS financial statements.

DO2 Mr Pacter believes that ideally this project should have provided guidance, to the Board and to those who use IFRSs, on which items of income and expense (if any) should be presented as items of other comprehensive income (OCI) and which of those (if any) should subsequently be recycled through profit or loss. Mr Pacter acknowledges and accepts that this project has a more short-term goal – 'to improve the consistency and clarity of the presentation of items of OCI'. He believes that this project fails to deliver on that objective, for the following reasons:

(a) Consistency is not achieved because the standard allows choice between presenting performance in a single performance statement or two performance statements. Users of financial statements—and the Board itself—have often said that accounting options are not helpful for understandability and comparability of financial statements.

(b) Clarity is not achieved because allowing two performance statements is inconsistent with the *Conceptual Framework*. The *Conceptual Framework* defines two types of items that measure an entity's performance—income and expenses. Mr Pacter believes that all items of income and expense should be presented in a single performance statement with appropriate subtotals (including profit or loss, if that can be defined) and supporting disclosures. This is consistent with reporting all assets and liabilities in a single statement of financial position, rather than multiple statements. Unfortunately, neither IAS 1 nor any other IFRS addresses criteria for which items are presented in OCI. And the recent history of which items are presented in OCI suggests that the decisions are based more on expediency than conceptual merit. In Mr Pacter's judgement, that is all the more reason to have all items of income and expense reported in a single performance statement.

DO3 Mr Pacter believes that the Board should breathe new life into its former project on performance reporting as a matter of urgency.

Guidance on implementing IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*

This guidance accompanies, but is not part of, IAS 1.

Illustrative financial statement structure

IG1 IAS 1 sets out the components of financial statements and minimum requirements for disclosure in the statements of financial position, comprehensive income and changes in equity. It also describes further items that may be presented either in the relevant financial statement or in the notes. This guidance provides simple examples of ways in which the requirements of IAS 1 for the presentation of the statements of financial position, comprehensive income and changes in equity might be met. An entity should change the order of presentation, the titles of the statements and the descriptions used for line items when necessary to suit its particular circumstances.

IG2 The guidance is in three sections. Paragraphs IG3–IG6 provide examples of the presentation of financial statements. Paragraphs IG7–IG9 provide an example of the determination of reclassification adjustments for available-for-sale financial assets in accordance with IAS 39 *Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement*. Paragraphs IG10 and IG11 provide examples of capital disclosures.

IG3 The illustrative statement of financial position shows one way in which an entity may present a statement of financial position distinguishing between current and non-current items. Other formats may be equally appropriate, provided the distinction is clear.

IG4 The illustrations use the term 'comprehensive income' to label the total of all components of comprehensive income, including profit or loss. The illustrations use the term 'other comprehensive income' to label income and expenses that are included in comprehensive income but excluded from profit or loss. IAS 1 does not require an entity to use those terms in its financial statements.

IG5 Two statements of comprehensive income are provided, to illustrate the alternative presentations of income and expenses in a single statement or in two statements. The single statement of comprehensive income illustrates the classification of income and expenses within profit or loss by function. The separate statement (in this example, 'the income statement') illustrates the classification of income and expenses within profit by nature.

IG6 The examples are not intended to illustrate all aspects of IFRSs, nor do they constitute a complete set of financial statements, which would also include a statement of cash flows, a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information.

Part I: Illustrative presentation of financial statements

XYZ Group – Statement of financial position as at 31 December 20X7

(in thousands of currency units)

	31 Dec 20X7	**31 Dec 20X6**
ASSETS		
Non-current assets		
Property, plant and equipment	350,700	360,020
Goodwill	80,800	91,200
Other intangible assets	227,470	227,470
Investments in associates	100,150	110,770
Available-for-sale financial assets	142,500	156,000
	901,620	945,460
Current assets		
Inventories	135,230	132,500
Trade receivables	91,600	110,800
Other current assets	25,650	12,540
Cash and cash equivalents	312,400	322,900
	564,880	578,740
Total assets	1,466,500	1,524,200

continued...

...continued

XYZ Group – Statement of financial position as at 31 December 20X7

(in thousands of currency units)

	31 Dec 20X7	31 Dec 20X6
EQUITY AND LIABILITIES		
Equity attributable to owners of the parent		
Share capital	650,000	600,000
Retained earnings	243,500	161,700
Other components of equity	10,200	21,200
	903,700	782,900
Non-controlling interests	70,050	48,600
Total equity	973,750	831,500
Non-current liabilities		
Long-term borrowings	120,000	160,000
Deferred tax	28,800	26,040
Long-term provisions	28,850	52,240
Total non-current liabilities	177,650	238,280
Current liabilities		
Trade and other payables	115,100	187,620
Short-term borrowings	150,000	200,000
Current portion of long-term borrowings	10,000	20,000
Current tax payable	35,000	42,000
Short-term provisions	5,000	4,800
Total current liabilities	315,100	454,420
Total liabilities	492,750	692,700
Total equity and liabilities	1,466,500	1,524,200

XYZ Group – Statement of comprehensive income for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(illustrating the presentation of comprehensive income in one statement and the classification of expenses within profit by function)

(in thousands of currency units)

	20X7	20X6
Revenue	390,000	355,000
Cost of sales	(245,000)	(230,000)
Gross profit	145,000	125,000
Other income	20,667	11,300
Distribution costs	(9,000)	(8,700)
Administrative expenses	(20,000)	(21,000)
Other expenses	(2,100)	(1,200)
Finance costs	(8,000)	(7,500)
Share of profit of associates[(a)]	35,100	30,100
Profit before tax	161,667	128,000
Income tax expense	(40,417)	(32,000)
Profit for the year from continuing operations	121,250	96,000
Loss for the year from discontinued operations	–	(30,500)
PROFIT FOR THE YEAR	121,250	65,500
Other comprehensive income:		
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations[(b)]	5,334	10,667
Available-for-sale financial assets[(b)]	(24,000)	26,667
Cash flow hedges[(b)]	(667)	(4,000)
Gains on property revaluation	933	3,367
Actuarial gains (losses) on defined benefit pension plans	(667)	1,333
Share of other comprehensive income of associates[(c)]	400	(700)
Income tax relating to components of other comprehensive income[(d)]	4,667	(9,334)
Other comprehensive income for the year, net of tax	(14,000)	28,000
TOTAL COMPREHENSIVE INCOME FOR THE YEAR	107,250	93,500

continued..

...continued

XYZ Group – Statement of comprehensive income for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(illustrating the presentation of comprehensive income in one statement and the classification of expenses within profit by function)

(in thousands of currency units)

	20X7	**20X6**
Profit attributable to:		
Owners of the parent	97,000	52,400
Non-controlling interests	24,250	13,100
	121,250	65,500
Total comprehensive income attributable to:		
Owners of the parent	85,800	74,800
Non-controlling interests	21,450	18,700
	107,250	93,500
Earnings per share (in currency units):		
Basic and diluted	0.46	0.30

continued..

...continued

XYZ Group – Statement of comprehensive income for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(illustrating the presentation of comprehensive income in one statement and the classification of expenses within profit by function)

(in thousands of currency units)

Alternatively, components of other comprehensive income could be presented in the statement of comprehensive income net of tax:

Other comprehensive income for the year, after tax:	**20X7**	**20X6**
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations	4,000	8,000
Available-for-sale financial assets	(18,000)	20,000
Cash flow hedges	(500)	(3,000)
Gains on property revaluation	600	2,700
Actuarial gains (losses) on defined benefit pension plans	(500)	1,000
Share of other comprehensive income of associates	400	(700)
Other comprehensive income for the year, net of tax[(d)]	(14,000)	28,000

(a) This means the share of associates' profit attributable to owners of the associates, ie it is after tax and non-controlling interests in the associates.

(b) This illustrates the aggregated presentation, with disclosure of the current year gain or loss and reclassification adjustment presented in the notes. Alternatively, a gross presentation can be used.

(c) This means the share of associates' other comprehensive income attributable to owners of the associates, ie it is after tax and minority interests in the associates.

(d) The income tax relating to each component of other comprehensive income is disclosed in the notes.

XYZ Group – Income statement for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(illustrating the presentation of comprehensive income in two statements and classification of expenses within profit by nature)

(in thousands of currency units)

	20X7	20X6
Revenue	390,000	355,000
Other income	20,667	11,300
Changes in inventories of finished goods and work in progress	(115,100)	(107,900)
Work performed by the entity and capitalised	16,000	15,000
Raw material and consumables used	(96,000)	(92,000)
Employee benefits expense	(45,000)	(43,000)
Depreciation and amortisation expense	(19,000)	(17,000)
Impairment of property, plant and equipment	(4,000)	–
Other expenses	(6,000)	(5,500)
Finance costs	(15,000)	(18,000)
Share of profit of associates[(e)]	35,100	30,100
Profit before tax	161,667	128,000
Income tax expense	(40,417)	(32,000)
Profit for the year from continuing operations	121,250	96,000
Loss for the year from discontinued operation	–	(30,500)
PROFIT FOR THE YEAR	121,250	65,500
Profit attributable to:		
Owners of the parent	97,000	52,400
Non-controlling interests	24,250	13,100
	121,250	65,500
Earnings per share (in currency units):		
Basic and diluted	0.46	0.30

(e) This means the share of associates' profit attributable to owners of the associates, ie it is after tax and non-controlling interests in the associates.

XYZ Group – Statement of comprehensive income for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(illustrating the presentation of comprehensive income in two statements)

(in thousands of currency units)

	20X7	**20X6**
Profit for the year	121,250	65,500
Other comprehensive income:		
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations	5,334	10,667
Available-for-sale financial assets	(24,000)	26,667
Cash flow hedges	(667)	(4,000)
Gains on property revaluation	933	3,367
Actuarial gains (losses) on defined benefit pension plans	(667)	1,333
Share of other comprehensive income of associates[(f)]	400	(700)
Income tax relating to components of other comprehensive income[(g)]	4,667	(9,334)
Other comprehensive income for the year, net of tax	(14,000)	28,000
TOTAL COMPREHENSIVE INCOME FOR THE YEAR	107,250	93,500
Total comprehensive income attributable to:		
Owners of the parent	85,800	74,800
Non-controlling interests	21,450	18,700
	107,250	93,500

Alternatively, components of other comprehensive income could be presented, net of tax. Refer to the statement of comprehensive income illustrating the presentation of income and expenses in one statement.

(f) This means the share of associates' other comprehensive income attributable to owners of the associates, ie it is after tax and non-controlling interests in the associates.

(g) The income tax relating to each component of other comprehensive income is disclosed in the notes.

XYZ Group

Disclosure of components of other comprehensive income[h]

Notes

Year ended 31 December 20X7

(in thousands of currency units)

		20X7		20X6
Other comprehensive income:				
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations[i]		5,334		10,667
Available-for-sale financial assets:				
Gains arising during the year	1,333		30,667	
Less: Reclassification adjustments for gains included in profit or loss	(25,333)	(24,000)	(4,000)	26,667
Cash flow hedges:				
Gains (losses) arising during the year	(4,667)		(4,000)	
Less: Reclassification adjustments for gains (losses) included in profit or loss	3,333		–	
Less: Adjustments for amounts transferred to initial carrying amount of hedged items	667	(667)	–	(4,000)

continued...

...continued

XYZ Group

Disclosure of components of other comprehensive income

Notes

Year ended 31 December 20X7

(in thousands of currency units)

	20X7	**20X6**
Gains on property revaluation	933	3,367
Actuarial gains (losses) on defined benefit pension plans	(667)	1,333
Share of other comprehensive income of associates	400	(700)
Other comprehensive income	(18,667)	37,334
Income tax relating to components of other comprehensive income[(j)]	4,667	(9,334)
Other comprehensive income for the year	(14,000)	28,000

(h) When an entity chooses an aggregated presentation in the statement of comprehensive income, the amounts for reclassification adjustments and current year gain or loss are presented in the notes.

(i) There was no disposal of a foreign operation. Therefore, there is no reclassification adjustment for the years presented.

(j) The income tax relating to each component of other comprehensive income is disclosed in the notes.

XYZ Group

Disclosure of tax effects relating to each component of other comprehensive income

Notes

Year ended 31 December 20X7

(in thousands of currency units)

		20X7			**20X6**	
	Before-tax amount	Tax (expense) benefit	Net-of-tax amount	Before-tax amount	Tax (expense) benefit	Net-of-tax amount
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations	5,334	(1,334)	4,000	10,667	(2,667)	8,000
Available-for-sale financial assets	(24,000)	6,000	(18,000)	26,667	(6,667)	20,000
Cash flow hedges	(667)	167	(500)	(4,000)	1,000	(3,000)
Gains on property revaluation	933	(333)	600	3,367	(667)	2,700
Actuarial gains (losses) on defined benefit pension plans	(667)	167	(500)	1,333	(333)	1,000
Share of other comprehensive income of associates	400	–	400	(700)	–	(700)
Other comprehensive income	(18,667)	4,667	(14,000)	37,334	(9,334)	28,000

XYZ Group – Statement of changes in equity for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(in thousands of currency units)

	Share capital	Retained earnings	Translation of foreign operations	Available-for-sale financial assets	Cash flow hedges	Revaluation surplus	Total	Non-controlling interests	Total equity
Balance at 1 January 20X6	600,000	118,100	(4,000)	1,600	2,000	–	717,700	29,800	747,500
Changes in accounting policy	–	400	–	–	–	–	400	100	500
Restated balance	600,000	118,500	(4,000)	1,600	2,000	–	718,100	29,900	748,000
Changes in equity for 20X6									
Dividends	–	(10,000)	–	–	–	–	(10,000)	–	(10,000)
Total comprehensive income for the year(k)	–	53,200	6,400	16,000	(2,400)	1,600	74,800	18,700	93,500
Balance at 31 December 20X6	600,000	161,700	2,400	17,600	(400)	1,600	782,900	48,600	831,500
Changes in equity for 20X7									
Issue of share capital	50,000	–	–	–	–	–	50,000	–	50,000
Dividends	–	(15,000)	–	–	–	–	(15,000)	–	(15,000)
Total comprehensive income for the year(l)	–	96,600	3,200	(14,400)	(400)	800	85,800	21,450	107,250
Transfer to retained earnings	–	200	–	–	–	(200)	–	–	–
Balance at 31 December 20X7	650,000	243,500	5,600	3,200	(800)	2,200	903,700	70,050	973,750

continued...

...continued

(k) The amount included in retained earnings for 20X6 of 53,200 represents profit attributable to owners of the parent of 52,400 plus actuarial gains on defined benefit pension plans of 800 (1,333, less tax 333, less non-controlling interests 200).

The amount included in the translation, available-for-sale and cash flow hedge reserves represent other comprehensive income for each component, net of tax and non-controlling interests, eg other comprehensive income related to available-for-sale financial assets for 20X6 of 16,000 is 26,667, less tax 6,667, less non-controlling interests 4,000.

The amount included in the revaluation surplus of 1,600 represents the share of other comprehensive income of associates of (700) plus gains on property revaluation of 2,300 (3,367, less tax 667, less non-controlling interests 400). Other comprehensive income of associates relates solely to gains or losses on property revaluation.

(l) The amount included in retained earnings for 20X7 of 96,600 represents profit attributable to owners of the parent of 97,000 plus actuarial losses on defined benefit pension plans of 400 (667, less tax 167, less non-controlling interests 100).

The amount included in the translation, available-for-sale and cash flow hedge reserves represents other comprehensive income for each component, net of tax and non-controlling interests, eg other comprehensive income related to the translation of foreign operations for 20X7 of 3,200 is 5,334, less tax 1,334, less non-controlling interests 800.

The amount included in the revaluation surplus of 800 represents the share of other comprehensive income of associates of 400 plus gains on property revaluation of 400 (933, less tax 333, less non-controlling interests 200). Other comprehensive income of associates relates solely to gains or losses on property revaluation.

Part II: Illustrative example of the determination of reclassification adjustments

IG7 The Standard requires an entity to disclose reclassification adjustments relating to each component of other comprehensive income.

IG8 This guidance provides an illustration of the calculation of reclassification adjustments for available-for-sale financial assets recognised in accordance with IAS 39.

IG9 On 31 December 20X5, XYZ Group purchased 1,000 shares (equity instruments) at 10 currency units (CU) per share, classified as available for sale. The fair value of the instruments at 31 December 20X6 was CU12; at 31 December 20X7 the fair value had increased to CU15. All of the instruments were sold on 31 December 20X7; no dividends were declared on those instruments during the time that they were held by XYZ Group. The applicable tax rate in accordance with IAS 12 *Income Taxes* is 30 per cent.

Calculation of gains

(in currency units)

	Before tax	**Income tax**	**Net of tax**
Gains recognised in other comprehensive income:			
Year ended 31 December 20X6	2,000	(600)	1,400
Year ended 31 December 20X7	3,000	(900)	2,100
Total gain	5,000	(1,500)	3,500

Amounts reported in profit or loss and other comprehensive income for the years ended 31 December 20X6 and 31 December 20X7

	20X7	20X6
Profit or loss:		
Gain on sale of instruments	5,000	
Income tax expense	(1,500)	
Net gain recognised in profit or loss	3,500	
Other comprehensive income:		
Gain arising during the year, net of tax	2,100	1,400
Reclassification adjustment, net of tax	(3,500)	–
Net gain (loss) recognised in other comprehensive income	(1,400)	1,400
	2,100	1,400

Alternatively, components of other comprehensive income may be shown gross of tax with a separate line item for tax effects:

	20X7	20X6
Profit or loss:		
Gain on sale of instruments	5,000	
Income tax expense	(1,500)	
Net gain recognised in profit or loss	3,500	
Other comprehensive income:		
Gain arising during the year	3,000	2,000
Reclassification adjustment	(5,000)	–
Income tax relating to other comprehensive income	600	(600)
Net gain (loss) recognised in other comprehensive income	(1,400)	1,400
	2,100	1,400

Part III: Illustrative examples of capital disclosures (paragraphs 134–136)

An entity that is not a regulated financial institution

IG10 The following example illustrates the application of paragraphs 134 and 135 for an entity that is not a financial institution and is not subject to an externally imposed capital requirement. In this example, the entity monitors capital using a debt-to-adjusted capital ratio. Other entities may use different methods to monitor capital. The example is also relatively simple. An entity decides, in the light of its circumstances, how much detail it provides to satisfy the requirements of paragraphs 134 and 135.

Facts

Group A manufactures and sells cars. Group A includes a finance subsidiary that provides finance to customers, primarily in the form of leases. Group A is not subject to any externally imposed capital requirements.

Example disclosure

The Group's objectives when managing capital are:

- to safeguard the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, so that it can continue to provide returns for shareholders and benefits for other stakeholders, and
- to provide an adequate return to shareholders by pricing products and services commensurately with the level of risk.

The Group sets the amount of capital in proportion to risk. The Group manages the capital structure and makes adjustments to it in the light of changes in economic conditions and the risk characteristics of the underlying assets. In order to maintain or adjust the capital structure, the Group may adjust the amount of dividends paid to shareholders, return capital to shareholders, issue new shares, or sell assets to reduce debt.

Consistently with others in the industry, the Group monitors capital on the basis of the debt-to-adjusted capital ratio. This ratio is calculated as net debt ÷ adjusted capital. Net debt is calculated as total debt (as shown in the statement of financial position) less cash and cash equivalents. Adjusted capital comprises all components of equity (ie share capital, share premium, non-controlling interests, retained earnings, and revaluation surplus) other than amounts accumulated in equity relating to cash flow hedges, and includes some forms of subordinated debt.

continued...

...continued

During 20X4, the Group's strategy, which was unchanged from 20X3, was to maintain the debt-to-adjusted capital ratio at the lower end of the range 6:1 to 7:1, in order to secure access to finance at a reasonable cost by maintaining a BB credit rating. The debt-to-adjusted capital ratios at 31 December 20X4 and at 31 December 20X3 were as follows:

	31 Dec 20X4	**31 Dec 20X3**
	CU million	**CU million**
Total debt	1,000	1,100
Less: cash and cash equivalents	(90)	(150)
Net debt	910	950
Total equity	110	105
Add: subordinated debt instruments	38	38
Less: amounts accumulated in equity relating to cash flow hedges	(10)	(5)
Adjusted capital	138	138
Debt-to-adjusted capital ratio	6.6	6.9

The decrease in the debt-to-adjusted capital ratio during 20X4 resulted primarily from the reduction in net debt that occurred on the sale of subsidiary Z. As a result of this reduction in net debt, improved profitability and lower levels of managed receivables, the dividend payment was increased to CU2.8 million for 20X4 (from CU2.5 million for 20X3).

An entity that has not complied with externally imposed capital requirements

IG11 The following example illustrates the application of paragraph 135(e) when an entity has not complied with externally imposed capital requirements during the period. Other disclosures would be provided to comply with the other requirements of paragraphs 134 and 135.

Facts

Entity A provides financial services to its customers and is subject to capital requirements imposed by Regulator B. During the year ended 31 December 20X7, Entity A did not comply with the capital requirements imposed by Regulator B. In its financial statements for the year ended 31 December 20X7, Entity A provides the following disclosure relating to its non-compliance.

Example disclosure

Entity A filed its quarterly regulatory capital return for 30 September 20X7 on 20 October 20X7. At that date, Entity A's regulatory capital was below the capital requirement imposed by Regulator B by CU1 million. As a result, Entity A was required to submit a plan to the regulator indicating how it would increase its regulatory capital to the amount required. Entity A submitted a plan that entailed selling part of its unquoted equities portfolio with a carrying amount of CU11.5 million in the fourth quarter of 20X7. In the fourth quarter of 20X7, Entity A sold its fixed interest investment portfolio for CU12.6 million and met its regulatory capital requirement.

Appendix A
Amendments to guidance on other HKFRSs

The following amendments to guidance on other HKFRSs are necessary in order to ensure consistency with the revised HKAS 1. In the amended paragraphs, new text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

***

The amendments contained in this appendix when this guidance was issued have been incorporated into the text of the relevant guidance.

Appendix ~~C~~B
Amendments to the guidance on implementing HKAS 1 *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income*

The following sets out amendments required for this Implementation Guidance resulting from amendments to HKAS 1 that are not yet effective. Once effective, the amendments set out below will be incorporated into the text of this Guidance and this appendix will be deleted. In the amended paragraphs shown below, new text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

Amendments to the guidance on implementing IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*

In the guidance on implementing IAS 1, paragraphs IG1, IG4 and IG5 are amended (new text is underlined and deleted text is struck through) and paragraph IG5A is added. In Part 1: Illustrative presentation of financial statements the examples of the statement of comprehensive income and the separate income statement are deleted and new examples of the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income and the statement of profit or loss are inserted.

IG1 IAS 1 sets out the components of financial statements and minimum requirements for disclosure in the statements of financial position, <u>profit or loss and other</u> comprehensive income and changes in equity. It also describes further items that may be presented either in the relevant financial statement or in the notes. This guidance provides simple examples of ways in which the requirements of IAS 1 for the presentation of the statements of financial position, <u>profit or loss and other</u> comprehensive income and changes in equity might be met. An entity should change the order of presentation, the titles of the statements and the descriptions used for line items when necessary to suit its particular circumstances.

IG4 The illustrations use the term ‘comprehensive income’ to label the total of all <u>items</u> ~~components~~ of <u>profit or loss and other</u> comprehensive income~~, including profit or loss~~. The illustrations use the term ‘other comprehensive income’ to label income and expenses that are included in comprehensive income but excluded from profit or loss. IAS 1 does not require an entity to use those terms in its financial statements.

IG5 Two statements of <u>profit or loss and other</u> comprehensive income are provided, to illustrate the alternative presentations of income and expenses in a single statement or in two statements. The ~~single~~ statement of <u>profit or loss and other</u> comprehensive income illustrates the classification of income and expenses within profit or loss by function. The separate statement (in this example, ‘the ~~income~~ statement <u>of profit or loss</u>’) illustrates the classification of income and expenses within profit by nature.

IG5A Two sets of examples of statements of profit or loss and other comprehensive income are shown. One shows the presentation while IAS 39 *Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement* remains effective and is applied; the other shows presentation when IFRS 9 *Financial Instruments* is applied.

Part I: Illustrative presentation of financial statements

Examples of statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income when IAS 39 *Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement* is applied

XYZ Group – Statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(illustrating the presentation of profit or loss and other comprehensive income in one statement and the classification of expenses within profit or loss by function)

(in thousands of currency units)

	20X7	**20X6**
Revenue	390,000	355,000
Cost of sales	(245,000)	(230,000)
Gross profit	145,000	125,000
Other income	20,667	11,300
Distribution costs	(9,000)	(8,700)
Administrative expenses	(20,000)	(21,000)
Other expenses	(2,100)	(1,200)
Finance costs	(8,000)	(7,500)
Share of profit of associates[a]	35,100	30,100
Profit before tax	161,667	128,000
Income tax expense	(40,417)	(32,000)
Profit for the year from continuing operations	121,250	96,000
Loss for the year from discontinued operations	–	(30,500)
PROFIT FOR THE YEAR	121,250	65,500
Other comprehensive income:		
Items that will not be reclassified to profit or loss:		
Gains on property revaluation	933	3,367
Actuarial gains (losses) on defined benefit pension plans	(667)	1,333
Share of gain (loss) on property revaluation of associates[c]	400	(700)
Income tax relating to items that will not be reclassified[d]	(166)	(1,000)
	500	3,000
Items that may be reclassified subsequently to profit or loss:		
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations[b]	5,334	10,667
Available-for-sale financial assets[b]	(24,000)	26,667
Cash flow hedges[b]	(667)	(4,000)
Income tax relating to items that may be reclassified[d]	4,833	(8,334)
	(14,500)	25,000
Other comprehensive income for the year, net of tax	(14,000)	28,000
TOTAL COMPREHENSIVE INCOME FOR THE YEAR	107,250	93,500

continued…

…continued

Examples of statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income when IAS 39 *Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement* is applied

XYZ Group – Statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(illustrating the presentation of profit or loss and other comprehensive income in one statement and the classification of expenses within profit or loss by function)

(in thousands of currency units)

Profit attributable to:		
Owners of the parent	97,000	52,400
Non-controlling interests	24,250	13,100
	121,250	65,500
Total comprehensive income attributable to:		
Owners of the parent	85,800	74,800
Non-controlling interests	21,450	18,700
	107,250	93,500
Earnings per share (in currency units):		
Basic and diluted	0.46	0.30

Alternatively, items of other comprehensive income could be presented in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income net of tax.

Other comprehensive income for the year, after tax:	**20X7**	**20X6**
Items that will not be reclassified to profit or loss:		
Gains on property revaluation	600	2,700
Actuarial gains (losses) on defined benefit pension plans	(500)	1,000
Share of gain (loss) on property revaluation of associates	400	(700)
	500	3,000
Items that may be reclassified subsequently to profit or loss:		
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations	4,000	8,000
Available-for-sale financial assets	(18,000)	20,000
Cash flow hedges	(500)	(3,000)
	(14,500)	25,000
Other comprehensive income for the year, net of tax[(d)]	(14,000)	28,000

(a) This means the share of associates' profit attributable to owners of the associates, ie it is after tax and non-controlling interests in the associates.

(b) This illustrates the aggregated presentation, with disclosure of the current year gain or loss and reclassification adjustment presented in the notes. Alternatively, a gross presentation can be used.

(c) This means the share of associates' gain (loss) on property revaluation attributable to owners of the associates, ie it is after tax and non-controlling interests in the associates.

(d) The income tax relating to each item of other comprehensive income is disclosed in the notes.

XYZ Group – Statement of profit or loss for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(illustrating the presentation of profit or loss and other comprehensive income in two statements and the classification of expenses within profit or loss by nature)

(in thousands of currency units)

	20X7	**20X6**
Revenue	390,000	355,000
Other income	20,667	11,300
Changes in inventories of finished goods and work in progress	(115,100)	(107,900)
Work performed by the entity and capitalised	16,000	15,000
Raw material and consumables used	(96,000)	(92,000)
Employee benefits expense	(45,000)	(43,000)
Depreciation and amortisation expense	(19,000)	(17,000)
Impairment of property, plant and equipment	(4,000)	–
Other expenses	(6,000)	(5,500)
Finance costs	(15,000)	(18,000)
Share of profit of associates[(e)]	35,100	30,100
Profit before tax	161,667	128,000
Income tax expense	(40,417)	(32,000)
Profit for the year from continuing operations	121,250	96,000
Loss for the year from discontinued operations	–	(30,500)
PROFIT FOR THE YEAR	121,250	65,500
Profit attributable to:		
Owners of the parent	97,000	52,400
Non-controlling interests	24,250	13,100
	121,250	65,500
Earnings per share (in currency units):		
Basic and diluted	0.46	0.30

(e) This means the share of associates' profit attributable to owners of the associates, ie it is after tax and non-controlling interests in the associates.

XYZ Group – Statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(illustrating the presentation of profit or loss and other comprehensive income in two statements)

(in thousands of currency units)

	20X7	20X6
Profit for the year	121,250	65,500
Other comprehensive income:		
Items that will not be reclassified to profit or loss:		
Gains on property revaluation	933	3,367
Actuarial gains (losses) on defined benefit pension plans	(667)	1,333
Share of gain (loss) on property revaluation of associates[(f)]	400	(700)
Income tax relating to items that will not be reclassified[(g)]	(166)	(1,000)
	500	3,000
Items that may be reclassified subsequently to profit or loss:		
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations	5,334	10,667
Available-for-sale financial assets	(24,000)	26,667
Cash flow hedges	(667)	(4,000)
Income tax relating to items that may be reclassified[(g)]	4,833	(8,334)
	(14,500)	25,000
Other comprehensive income for the year, net of tax	(14,000)	28,000
TOTAL COMPREHENSIVE INCOME FOR THE YEAR	107,250	93,500
Total comprehensive income attributable to:		
Owners of the parent	85,800	74,800
Non-controlling interests	21,450	18,700
	107,250	93,500

Alternatively, items of other comprehensive income could be presented, net of tax. Refer to the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income illustrating the presentation of income and expenses in one statement.

(f) This means the share of associates' gain (loss) on property revaluation attributable to owners of the associates, ie it is after tax and non-controlling interests in the associates.

(g) The income tax relating to each item of other comprehensive income is disclosed in the notes.

Examples of statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income when IFRS 9 *Financial Instruments* is applied

XYZ Group – Statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(illustrating the presentation of profit or loss and other comprehensive income in one statement and the classification of expenses within profit or loss by function)

(in thousands of currency units)

	20X7	**20X6**
Revenue	390,000	355,000
Cost of sales	(245,000)	(230,000)
Gross profit	145,000	125,000
Other income	20,667	11,300
Distribution costs	(9,000)	(8,700)
Administrative expenses	(20,000)	(21,000)
Other expenses	(2,100)	(1,200)
Finance costs	(8,000)	(7,500)
Share of profit of associates[(a)]	35,100	30,100
Profit before tax	161,667	128,000
Income tax expense	(40,417)	(32,000)
Profit for the year from continuing operations	121,250	96,000
Loss for the year from discontinued operations	–	(30,500)
PROFIT FOR THE YEAR	121,250	65,500
Other comprehensive income:		
Items that will not be reclassified to profit or loss:		
Gains on property revaluation	933	3,367
Investments in equity instruments[~~(b)~~]	(24,000)	26,667
Actuarial gains (losses) on defined benefit pension plans	(667)	1,333
Share of gain (loss) on property revaluation of associates[(c)]	400	(700)
Income tax relating to items that will not be reclassified[(d)]	5,834	(7,667)
	(17,500)	23,000
Items that may be reclassified subsequently to profit or loss:		
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations[(b)]	5,334	10,667
Cash flow hedges[(b)]	(667)	(4,000)
Income tax relating to items that may be reclassified[(d)]	(1,167)	(1,667)
	3,500	5,000
Other comprehensive income for the year, net of tax	(14,000)	28,000
TOTAL COMPREHENSIVE INCOME FOR THE YEAR	107,250	93,500

continued…

…continued

Examples of statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income when IFRS 9 *Financial Instruments* is applied

XYZ Group – Statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(illustrating the presentation of profit or loss and other comprehensive income in one statement and the classification of expenses within profit or loss by function)

(in thousands of currency units)

Profit attributable to:		
Owners of the parent	97,000	52,400
Non-controlling interests	24,250	13,100
	121,250	65,500
Total comprehensive income attributable to:		
Owners of the parent	85,800	74,800
Non-controlling interests	21,450	18,700
	107,250	93,500
Earnings per share (in currency units):		
Basic and diluted	0.46	0.30

Alternatively, items of other comprehensive income could be presented in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income net of tax.

Other comprehensive income for the year, after tax:		
Items that will not be reclassified to profit or loss:		
Gains on property revaluation	600	2,700
Investments in equity instruments	(18,000)	20,000
Actuarial gains (losses) on defined benefit pension plans	(500)	1,000
Share of gain (loss) on property revaluation of associates	400	(700)
	(17,500)	23,000
Items that may be reclassified subsequently to profit or loss:		
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations	4,000	8,000
Cash flow hedges	(500)	(3,000)
	3,500	5,000
Other comprehensive income for the year, net of tax[d]	(14,000)	28,000

(a) This means the share of associates' profit attributable to owners of the associates, ie it is after tax and non-controlling interests in the associates.

(b) This illustrates the aggregated presentation, with disclosure of the current year gain or loss and reclassification adjustment presented in the notes. Alternatively, a gross presentation can be used.

(c) This means the share of associates' gain (loss) on property revaluation attributable to owners of the associates, ie it is after tax and non-controlling interests in the associates.

(d) The income tax relating to each item of other comprehensive income is disclosed in the notes.

XYZ Group – Statement of profit or loss for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(illustrating the presentation of profit or loss and other comprehensive income in two statements and the classification of expenses within profit or loss by nature)

(in thousands of currency units)

	20X7	20X6
Revenue	390,000	355,000
Other income	20,667	11,300
Changes in inventories of finished goods and work in progress	(115,100)	(107,900)
Work performed by the entity and capitalised	16,000	15,000
Raw material and consumables used	(96,000)	(92,000)
Employee benefits expense	(45,000)	(43,000)
Depreciation and amortisation expense	(19,000)	(17,000)
Impairment of property, plant and equipment	(4,000)	–
Other expenses	(6,000)	(5,500)
Finance costs	(15,000)	(18,000)
Share of profit of associates[e]	35,100	30,100
Profit before tax	161,667	128,000
Income tax expense	(40,417)	(32,000)
Profit for the year from continuing operations	121,250	96,000
Loss for the year from discontinued operations	–	(30,500)
PROFIT FOR THE YEAR	121,250	65,500
Profit attributable to:		
Owners of the parent	97,000	52,400
Non-controlling interests	24,250	13,100
	121,250	65,500
Earnings per share (in currency units):		
Basic and diluted	0.46	0.30

(e) This means the share of associates' profit attributable to owners of the associates, ie it is after tax and non-controlling interests in the associates.

XYZ Group – Statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for the year ended 31 December 20X7

(illustrating the presentation of profit or loss and other comprehensive income in two statements)

(in thousands of currency units)

	20X7	**20X6**
Profit for the year	121,250	65,500
Other comprehensive income:		
Items that will not be reclassified to profit or loss:		
Gains on property revaluation	933	3,367
Investments in equity instruments	(24,000)	26,667
Actuarial gains (losses) on defined benefit pension plans	(667)	1,333
Share of gain (loss) on property revaluation of associates[f]	400	(700)
Income tax relating to items that will not be reclassified[g]	5,834	(7,667)
	(17,500)	23,000
Items that may be reclassified subsequently to profit or loss:		
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations	5,334	10,667
Cash flow hedges	(667)	(4,000)
Income tax relating to items that may be reclassified[g]	(1,167)	(1,667)
	3,500	5,000
Other comprehensive income for the year, net of tax	(14,000)	28,000
TOTAL COMPREHENSIVE INCOME FOR THE YEAR	107,250	93,500
Total comprehensive income attributable to:		
Owners of the parent	85,800	74,800
Non-controlling interests	21,450	18,700
	107,250	93,500

Alternatively, items of other comprehensive income could be presented, net of tax. Refer to the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income illustrating the presentation of income and expenses in one statement.

(f) This means the share of associates' gain (loss) on property revaluation attributable to owners of the associates, ie it is after tax and non-controlling interests in the associates.

(g) The income tax relating to each item of other comprehensive income is disclosed in the notes.

Table of Concordance

This table shows how the contents of HKAS 1 and HKAS 1 (revised 2007) correspond. Paragraphs are treated as corresponding if they broadly address the same matter even though the guidance may differ.

Superseded HKAS 1 paragraph	HKAS 1 (revised 2007) paragraph
1	1, 3
2	2
3	4,7
4	None
5	5
6	6
7	9
8	10
9, 10	13, 14
11	7
12	7
None	8
None	11, 12
13–22	15–24
23, 24	25, 26
25, 26	27, 28
27, 28	45, 46
29–31	29–31
32–35	32–35
36	38
None	39
37–41	40–44
42, 43	47, 48
44–48	49–53
49, 50	36, 37
51–67	60–76
68	54
68A	54
69–73	55–59
74–77	77–80
None	81
78	88
79	89
80	89
81	82
82	83
None	84
83–85	85–87
None	90–96
86–94	97–105
95	107
None	108
96, 97	106, 107
98	109
101	None
102	111
103–107	112–116
108–115	117–124
116–124	125–133
124A–124C	134–136
125, 126	137, 138
127	139
127A	None
127B	None
128	140
IG1	IG1
None	IG2
IG2	IG3
None	IG4
IG3, IG4	IG5, IG6
None	IG7
None	IG8
None	IG9
IG5, IG6	IG10, IG11

HKAS 12
Revised ~~December 2010~~April 2012

Hong Kong Accounting Standard 12

Income Taxes

Hong Kong Institute of
Certified Public Accountants
香港會計師公會

CONTENTS

~~D~~ ~~Amendments resulting from other HKFRSs~~

~~E~~ ~~Amendments to HKAS 12 *Deferred Tax: Recovery of Underlying Assets*~~

BASIS FOR CONCLUSIONS

Hong Kong Accounting Standard 12 *Income Taxes* (HKAS 12) is set out in paragraphs 1-~~95~~9. All the paragraphs have equal authority. HKAS 12 shall be read in the context of its objective, the *Preface to Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards* and the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting ~~the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements~~*. HKAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors* provides a basis for selecting and applying accounting policies in the absence of explicit guidance.

6 An interest payable has a carrying amount of $100. The related interest will be deductible for tax purposes only when it is paid.

The tax base of the interest payable is:

Carrying Amount		*Deductible Amounts*		*Taxable Amounts*		*Tax Base*
$100	-	*$100*	+	*Nil*	=	*Nil*

9 Some items have a tax base but are not recognised as assets and liabilities in the statement of financial position. For example, research costs are recognised as an expense in determining accounting profit in the period in which they are incurred but may not be permitted as a deduction in determining taxable profit (tax loss) until a later period. The difference between the tax base of the research costs, being the amount the taxation authorities will permit as a deduction in future periods, and the carrying amount of nil is a deductible temporary difference that results in a deferred tax asset.

10 Where the tax base of an asset or liability is not immediately apparent, it is helpful to consider the fundamental principle upon which this Standard is based: that an entity shall, with certain limited exceptions, recognise a deferred tax liability (asset) whenever recovery or settlement of the carrying amount of an asset or liability would make future tax payments larger (smaller) than they would be if such recovery or settlement were to have no tax consequences. Example C following paragraph ~~52~~ 51A illustrates circumstances when it may be helpful to consider this fundamental principle, for example, when the tax base of an asset or liability depends on the expected manner of recovery or settlement.

11 In consolidated financial statements, temporary differences are determined by comparing the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities in the consolidated financial statements with the appropriate tax base. The tax base is determined by reference to a consolidated tax return in those jurisdictions in which such a return is filed. In other jurisdictions, the tax base is determined by reference to the tax returns of each entity in the group.

Recognition of current tax liabilities and current tax assets

12 Current tax for current and prior periods shall, to the extent unpaid, be recognised as a liability. If the amount already paid in respect of current and prior periods exceeds the amount due for those periods, the excess shall be recognised as an asset.

13 The benefit relating to a tax loss that can be carried back to recover current tax of a previous period shall be recognised as an asset.

14 When a tax loss is used to recover current tax of a previous period, an entity recognises the benefit as an asset in the period in which the tax loss occurs because it is probable that the benefit will flow to the entity and the benefit can be reliably measured.

Recognition of deferred tax liabilities and deferred tax assets

Taxable temporary differences

15 A deferred tax liability shall be recognised for all taxable temporary differences, except to the extent that the deferred tax liability arises from:

(a) the initial recognition of goodwill; or

(b) the initial recognition of an asset or liability in a transaction which:

(i) is not a business combination; and

Measurement

46 **Current tax liabilities (assets) for the current and prior periods shall be measured at the amount expected to be paid to (recovered from) the taxation authorities, using the tax rates (and tax laws) that have been enacted or substantively enacted by the end of the reporting period.**

47 **Deferred tax assets and liabilities shall be measured at the tax rates that are expected to apply to the period when the asset is realised or the liability is settled, based on tax rates (and tax laws) that have been enacted or substantively enacted by the end of the reporting period.**

48 Current and deferred tax assets and liabilities are usually measured using the tax rates (and tax laws) that have been enacted. However, in some jurisdictions, announcements of tax rates (and tax laws) by the government have the substantive effect of actual enactment, which may follow the announcement by a period of several months. In these circumstances, tax assets and liabilities are measured using the announced tax rate (and tax laws).

49 When different tax rates apply to different levels of taxable income, deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using the average rates that are expected to apply to the taxable profit (tax loss) of the periods in which the temporary differences are expected to reverse.

50 [Deleted]

51 **The measurement of deferred tax liabilities and deferred tax assets shall reflect the tax consequences that would follow from the manner in which the entity expects, at the end of the reporting period, to recover or settle the carrying amount of its assets and liabilities.**

~~52~~51A In some jurisdictions, the manner in which an entity recovers (settles) the carrying amount of an asset (liability) may affect either or both of:

(a) the tax rate applicable when the entity recovers (settles) the carrying amount of the asset (liability); and

(b) the tax base of the asset (liability).

In such cases, an entity measures deferred tax liabilities and deferred tax assets using the tax rate and the tax base that are consistent with the expected manner of recovery or settlement.

Example A
An ~~asset~~ item of property, plant and equipment has a carrying amount of 100 and a tax base of 60. A tax rate of 20% would apply if the ~~asset~~ item were sold and a tax rate of 30% would apply to other income. *The entity recognises a deferred tax liability of 8 (40 at 20%) if it expects to sell the ~~asset~~ item without further use and a deferred tax liability of 12 (40 at 30%) if it expects to retain the ~~asset~~ item and recover its carrying amount through use.*

Example B

An ~~asset~~ item of property, plant and equipment with a cost of 100 and a carrying amount of 80 is revalued to 150. No equivalent adjustment is made for tax purposes. Cumulative depreciation for tax purposes is 30 and the tax rate is 30%. If the ~~asset~~ item is sold for more than cost, the cumulative tax depreciation of 30 will be included in taxable income but sale proceeds in excess of cost will not be taxable.

The tax base of the ~~asset~~ item is 70 and there is a taxable temporary difference of 80. If the entity expects to recover the carrying amount by using the ~~asset~~ item, it must generate taxable income of 150, but will only be able to deduct depreciation of 70. On this basis, there is a deferred tax liability of 24 (80 at 30%). If the entity expects to recover the carrying amount by selling the ~~asset~~ item immediately for proceeds of 150, the deferred tax liability is computed as follows:

	Taxable Temporary Difference	*Tax Rate*	*Deferred Tax Liability*
Cumulative tax depreciation	*30*	*30%*	*9*
Proceeds in excess of cost	*50*	*nil*	*–*
Total	*80*		*9*

(note: in accordance with paragraph 61A, the additional deferred tax that arises on the revaluation is recognised in other comprehensive income)

Example C

The facts are as in example B, except that if the ~~asset~~ item is sold for more than cost, the cumulative tax depreciation will be included in taxable income (taxed at 30%) and the sale proceeds will be taxed at 40%, after deducting an inflation-adjusted cost of 110.

If the entity expects to recover the carrying amount by using the ~~asset~~ item, it must generate taxable income of 150, but will only be able to deduct depreciation of 70. On this basis, the tax base is 70, there is a taxable temporary difference of 80 and there is a deferred tax liability of 24 (80 at 30%), as in example B.

If the entity expects to recover the carrying amount by selling the ~~asset~~ item immediately for proceeds of 150, the entity will be able to deduct the indexed cost of 110. The net proceeds of 40 will be taxed at 40%. In addition, the cumulative tax depreciation of 30 will be included in taxable income and taxed at 30%. On this basis, the tax base is 80 (110 less 30), there is a taxable temporary difference of 70 and there is a deferred tax liability of 25 (40 at 40% plus 30 at 30%). If the tax base is not immediately apparent in this example, it may be helpful to consider the fundamental principle set out in paragraph 10.

(note: in accordance with paragraph 61A, the additional deferred tax that arises on the revaluation is recognised in other comprehensive income)

51B If a deferred tax liability or deferred tax asset arises from a non-depreciable asset measured using the revaluation model in HKAS 16, the measurement of the deferred tax liability or deferred tax asset shall reflect the tax consequences of recovering the carrying amount of the non-depreciable asset through sale, regardless of the basis of measuring the carrying amount of that asset. Accordingly, if the tax law specifies a tax rate applicable to the taxable amount derived from the sale of an asset that differs from the tax rate applicable to the taxable amount derived from using an asset, the former rate is applied in measuring the deferred tax liability or asset related to a non-depreciable asset.

51C If a deferred tax liability or asset arises from investment property that is measured using the fair value model in HKAS 40, there is a rebuttable presumption that the carrying amount of the investment property will be recovered through sale. Accordingly, unless the presumption is rebutted, the measurement of the deferred tax liability or deferred tax asset shall reflect the tax consequences of recovering the carrying amount of the investment property entirely through sale. This presumption is rebutted if the investment property is depreciable and is held within a business model whose objective is to consume substantially all of the economic benefits embodied in the investment property over time, rather than through sale. If the presumption is rebutted, the requirements of paragraphs 51 and 51A shall be followed.

Example illustrating paragraph 51C

An investment property has a cost of 100 and fair value of 150. It is measured using the fair value model in HKAS 40. It comprises land with a cost of 40 and fair value of 60 and a building with a cost of 60 and fair value of 90. The land has an unlimited useful life.

Cumulative depreciation of the building for tax purposes is 30. Unrealised changes in the fair value of the investment property do not affect taxable profit. If the investment property is sold for more than cost, the reversal of the cumulative tax depreciation of 30 will be included in taxable profit and taxed at an ordinary tax rate of 30%. For sales proceeds in excess of cost, tax law specifies tax rates of 25% for assets held for less than two years and 20% for assets held for two years or more.

Because the investment property is measured using the fair value model in HKAS 40, there is a rebuttable presumption that the entity will recover the carrying amount of the investment property entirely through sale. If that presumption is not rebutted, the deferred tax reflects the tax consequences of recovering the carrying amount entirely through sale, even if the entity expects to earn rental income from the property before sale.

The tax base of the land if it is sold is 40 and there is a taxable temporary difference of 20 (60 – 40). The tax base of the building if it is sold is 30 (60 – 30) and there is a taxable temporary difference of 60 (90 – 30). As a result, the total taxable temporary difference relating to the investment property is 80 (20 + 60).

In accordance with paragraph 47, the tax rate is the rate expected to apply to the period when the investment property is realised. Thus, the resulting deferred tax liability is computed as follows, if the entity expects to sell the property after holding it for more than two years:

	Taxable Temporary Difference	*Tax Rate*	*Deferred Tax Liability*
Cumulative tax depreciation	*30*	*30%*	*9*
Proceeds in excess of cost	*50*	*20%*	*10*
Total	*80*		*19*

If the entity expects to sell the property after holding it for less than two years, the above computation would be amended to apply a tax rate of 25%, rather than 20%, to the proceeds in excess of cost.

If, instead, the entity holds the building within a business model whose objective is to consume substantially all of the economic benefits embodied in the building over time, rather than through sale, this presumption would be rebutted for the building. However, the land is not depreciable. Therefore the presumption of recovery through sale would not be rebutted for the land. It follows that the deferred tax liability would reflect the tax consequences of recovering the carrying amount of the building through use and the carrying amount of the land through sale.

The tax base of the building if it is used is 30 (60 – 30) and there is a taxable temporary difference of 60 (90 – 30), resulting in a deferred tax liability of 18 (60 at 30%).

The tax base of the land if it is sold is 40 and there is a taxable temporary difference of 20 (60 – 40), resulting in a deferred tax liability of 4 (20 at 20%).

As a result, if the presumption of recovery through sale is rebutted for the building, the deferred tax liability relating to the investment property is 22 (18 + 4).

51D The rebuttable presumption in paragraph 51C also applies when a deferred tax liability or a deferred tax asset arises from measuring investment property in a business combination if the entity will use the fair value model when subsequently measuring that investment property.

51E Paragraphs 51B–51D do not change the requirements to apply the principles in paragraphs 24–33 (deductible temporary differences) and paragraphs 34–36 (unused tax losses and unused tax credits) of this Standard when recognising and measuring deferred tax assets.

52A In some jurisdictions, income taxes are payable at a higher or lower rate if part or all of the net profit or retained earnings is paid out as a dividend to shareholders of the entity. In some other jurisdictions, income taxes may be refundable or payable if part or all of the net profit or retained earnings is paid out as a dividend to shareholders of the entity. In these circumstances, current and deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured at the tax rate applicable to undistributed profits.

52B In the circumstances described in paragraph 52A, the income tax consequences of dividends are recognised when a liability to pay the dividend is recognised. The income tax consequences of dividends are more directly linked to past transactions or events than to distributions to owners. Therefore, the income tax consequences of dividends are recognised in profit or loss for the period as required by paragraph 58 except to the extent that the income tax consequences of dividends arise from the circumstances described in paragraph 58(a) and (b).

Example Illustrating Paragraphs 52A and 52B

The following example deals with the measurement of current and deferred tax assets and liabilities for an entity in a jurisdiction where income taxes are payable at a higher rate on undistributed profits (50%) with an amount being refundable when profits are distributed. The tax rate on distributed profits is 35%. At the end of the reporting period, 31 December 20X1, the entity does not recognise a liability for dividends proposed or declared after the reporting period. As a result, no dividends are recognised in the year 20X1. Taxable income for 20X1 is 100,000. The net taxable temporary difference for the year 20X1 is 40,000.

The entity recognises a current tax liability and a current income tax expense of 50,000 (100,000 at 50%). No asset is recognised for the amount potentially recoverable as a result of future dividends. The entity also recognises a deferred tax liability and deferred tax expense of 20,000 (40,000 at 50%) representing the income taxes that the entity will pay when it recovers or settles the carrying amounts of its assets and liabilities based on the tax rate applicable to undistributed profits.

Subsequently, on 15 March 20X2 the entity recognises dividends of 10,000 from previous operating profits as a liability.

On 15 March 20X2, the entity recognises the recovery of income taxes of 1,500 (15% of the dividends recognised as a liability) as a current tax asset and as a reduction of current income tax expense for 20X2.

53 Deferred tax assets and liabilities shall not be discounted.

54 The reliable determination of deferred tax assets and liabilities on a discounted basis requires detailed scheduling of the timing of the reversal of each temporary difference. In many cases such scheduling is impracticable or highly complex. Therefore, it is inappropriate to require discounting of deferred tax assets and liabilities. To permit, but not to require, discounting would result in deferred tax assets and liabilities which would not be comparable between entities. Therefore, this Standard does not require or permit the discounting of deferred tax assets and liabilities.

55 Temporary differences are determined by reference to the carrying amount of an asset or liability. This applies even where that carrying amount is itself determined on a discounted basis, for example in the case of retirement benefit obligations (see HKAS19 *Employee Benefits*).

56 The carrying amount of a deferred tax asset shall be reviewed at the end of each reporting period. An entity shall reduce the carrying amount of a deferred tax asset to the extent that it is no longer probable that sufficient taxable profit will be available to allow the benefit of part or all of that deferred tax asset to be utilised. Any such reduction shall be reversed to the extent that it becomes probable that sufficient taxable profit will be available.

93 Paragraph 68 shall be applied prospectively from the effective date of HKFRS 3 (as revised in 2008) to the recognition of deferred tax assets acquired in business combinations.

94 Therefore, entities shall not adjust the accounting for prior business combinations if tax benefits failed to satisfy the criteria for separate recognition as of the acquisition date and are recognised after the acquisition date, unless the benefits are recognised within the measurement period and result from new information about facts and circumstances that existed at the acquisition date. Other tax benefits recognised shall be recognised in profit or loss (or, if this Standard so requires, outside profit or loss).

95 HKFRS 3 (as revised in 2008) amended paragraphs 21 and 67 and added paragraphs 32A and 81(j) and (k). An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 July 2009. If an entity applies HKFRS 3 (revised 2008) for an earlier period, the amendments shall also be applied for that earlier period.

96 *[This paragraph refers to amendments with an effective date after 1 January 2012, and is therefore not included in this edition.]*

97 *[This paragraph refers to amendments with an effective date after 1 January 2012, and is* therefore not included in this edition.]

98 Paragraph 52 was renumbered as 51A, paragraph 10 and the examples following paragraph 51A were amended, and paragraphs 51B and 51C and the following example and paragraphs 51D, 51E and 99 were added by *Deferred Tax: Recovery of Underlying Assets*, issued in December 2010. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2012. Earlier application is permitted. If an entity applies the amendments for an earlier period, it shall disclose that fact.

Withdrawal of HK(SIC)- Int 21

99 The amendments made by *Deferred Tax: Recovery of Underlying Assets*, issued in December 2010, supersede Hong Kong (SIC) Interpretation 21 *Income Taxes—Recovery of Revalued Non-Depreciable Assets.*

Acknowledgement

The Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants is indebted to the Australian Accounting Research Foundation for granting permission to use material from its Standard AASB 1020 "Income taxes" as some of the explanatory guidance and illustrative examples in this Standard.

Basis for Conclusions on IAS 12 *Income Taxes*

This Basis for Conclusions accompanies, but is not part of, IAS 12.

HKAS 12 is based on IAS 12 *Income Taxes*. In approving HKAS 12, the Council of the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants considered and agreed with the IASB's Basis for Conclusions on IAS 12. Accordingly, there are no significant differences between HKAS 12 and IAS 12. The IASB's Basis for Conclusions is reproduced below. The paragraph numbers of IAS 12 referred to below generally correspond with those in HKAS 12.

Introduction

BC1 When IAS 12 *Income Taxes* was issued by the International Accounting Standards Committee in 1996 to replace the previous IAS 12 *Accounting for Taxes on Income* (issued in July 1979), the Standard was not accompanied by a Basis for Conclusions. This Basis for Conclusions is not comprehensive. It summarises only the International Accounting Standards Board's considerations in making the amendments to IAS 12 contained in *Deferred Tax: Recovery of Underlying Assets* issued in December 2010. Individual Board members gave greater weight to some factors than to others.

BC2 The Board amended IAS 12 to address an issue that arises when entities apply the measurement principle in IAS 12 to temporary differences relating to investment properties that are measured using the fair value model in IAS 40 *Investment Property*.

BC3 In March 2009 the Board published an exposure draft, *Income Tax* (the 2009 exposure draft), proposing a new IFRS to replace IAS 12. In the 2009 exposure draft, the Board addressed this issue as part of a broad proposal relating to the determination of tax basis. In October 2009 the Board decided not to proceed with the proposals in the 2009 exposure draft and announced that, together with the US Financial Accounting Standards Board, it aimed to conduct a fundamental review of the accounting for income tax in the future. In the meantime, the Board would address specific significant current practice issues.

BC4 In September 2010 the Board published proposals for addressing one of those practice issues in an exposure draft *Deferred Tax: Recovery of Underlying Assets* with a 60-day comment period. Although that is shorter than the Board's normal 120-day comment period, the Board concluded that this was justified because the amendments were straightforward and the exposure draft was short. In addition, the amendments were addressing a problem that existed in practice and needed to be solved as soon as possible. The Board considered the comments it received on the exposure draft and in December 2010 issued the amendments to IAS 12. The Board intends to address other practice issues arising from IAS 12 in due course, when other priorities on its agenda permit this.

Recovery of revalued non-depreciable assets

BC5 In December 2010, the Board incorporated in paragraph 51B of IAS 12 the consensus previously contained in SIC Interpretation 21 *Income Taxes—Recovery of Revalued Non-Depreciable Assets*. However, because paragraph 51C addresses investment property carried at fair value, the Board excluded such assets from the scope of paragraph 51B. Paragraphs BC6 and BC7 set out the basis that the Standing Interpretations Committee (SIC) gave for the conclusions it reached in developing the consensus expressed in SIC-21.

BC6 The SIC noted that the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* stated that an entity recognises an asset if it is probable that the future economic benefits associated with the asset will flow to the entity. Generally, those future economic benefits will be derived (and therefore the carrying amount of an asset will be recovered) through sale, through use, or through use and subsequent sale. Recognition of depreciation implies that the carrying amount of a depreciable asset is expected to be recovered through use to the extent of its depreciable amount, and through sale at its residual value. Consistently with this, the carrying amount of a non-depreciable asset, such as land having an unlimited life, will be recovered only through sale. In other words, because the asset is not depreciated, no part of its carrying amount is expected to be recovered (ie consumed) through use. Deferred taxes associated with the non-depreciable asset reflect the tax consequences of selling the asset.

BC7 The SIC noted that the expected manner of recovery is not predicated on the basis of measuring the carrying amount of the asset. For example, if the carrying amount of a non-depreciable asset is measured at its value in use, the basis of measurement does not imply that the carrying amount of the asset is expected to be recovered through use, but through its residual value upon ultimate disposal.

Recovery of investment properties

Reason for the exception

BC8 IAS 12 applies the principle that the measurement of deferred tax liabilities and deferred tax assets should reflect the tax consequences that would follow from the manner in which the entity expects to recover or settle the carrying amount of its assets and liabilities. In many cases, however, an entity expects to rent out investment property to earn rental income and then sell it to gain from capital appreciation at some point in the future. Without specific plans for disposal of the investment property, it is difficult and subjective to estimate how much of the carrying amount of the investment property will be recovered through cash flows from rental income and how much of it will be recovered through cash flows from selling the asset.

BC9 It is particularly difficult and subjective to determine the entity's expected manner of recovery for investment property that is measured using the fair value model in IAS 40. In contrast, for investment property that is measured using the cost model in IAS 40, the Board believes that the estimates required for depreciation establish the expected manner of recovery because there is a general presumption that an asset's carrying amount is recovered through use to the extent of the amount subject to depreciation and through sale to the extent of the residual value.

BC10 To address this issue, the Board introduced an exception to the principle in IAS 12 that applies when an entity adopts an accounting policy of remeasuring investment property at fair value. The purpose of the exception is to reflect the entity's expectation of recovery of the investment property in a practical manner that involves little subjectivity.

BC11 Many respondents to the exposure draft of September 2010 commented that the Board should develop application guidance rather than creating an exception. The Board could have achieved a similar result in some cases by providing application guidance on how to apply the underlying principle to investment property. However, the Board chose an exception because it is simple, straightforward and can avoid unintended consequences by a strict definition of its scope. In fact, this exception is very similar to application guidance. However, it is technically an exception because, in some cases, the asset's carrying amount is assumed to be recovered entirely through sale even though an entity expects it to be recovered partly through sale and partly through use.

BC12 The Board also noted that application guidance would not resolve a practice issue that arises when the future income generated from an asset is expected to exceed the carrying amount of that asset and that future income will be subject to two or more different tax regimes. In those situations, IAS 12 provides no basis for determining which tax rate and tax base apply to the recovery of the carrying amount. The Board concluded that the practical way to resolve this issue was to create an exception that determines the manner of recovery of an asset within the scope of that exception.

Scope of the exception

BC13 The Board understands that the concerns raised in practice relate primarily to investment property measured using the fair value model in IAS 40. The Board proposed in the exposure draft that the exception should also apply to property, plant and equipment or intangible assets measured using the revaluation model in IAS 16 *Property, Plant and Equipment* or IAS 38 *Intangible Assets*. That was because in assessing the difficulty and subjectivity involved in determining the expected manner of recovering the carrying amount of the underlying asset, there is no underlying difference between regularly fair valuing assets through a revaluation accounting policy and applying a fair value measurement model.

BC14 Many respondents disagreed with the proposal to include property, plant and equipment or intangible assets measured using the revaluation model in IAS 16 or IAS 38 in the scope of the exception. They stated that many items of property, plant and equipment are recovered through use rather than through sale, and that this is consistent with the definition of property, plant and equipment in IAS 16. In addition, many respondents disagreed with the presumption of recovery through sale when the underlying assets are intangible assets for similar reasons. They also warned of unintended consequences that could arise because of the varying nature of intangible assets. Many respondents suggested limiting the scope of the exception to investment properties measured using the fair value model in IAS 40. Having considered those comments, the Board adopted that suggestion.

BC15 Some respondents supported inclusion of property, plant and equipment in the scope of the exception, including property, plant and equipment measured on a cost basis, because of their concerns about the lack of discounting deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities and about a possible double-counting of tax effects (see paragraph BC19). However, the Board concluded that considering concerns about the lack of discounting and about the possible double-counting was outside the limited scope of the amendments.

BC16 The Board made it clear that the exception also applies on initial measurement of investment property acquired in a business combination if the investment property will subsequently be measured using the fair value model in IAS 40. If the exception did not apply in these circumstances, deferred taxes might reflect the tax consequences of use at the acquisition date, but at a later date reflect the tax consequences of sale. The Board believes that measurement of deferred taxes at the acquisition date should be consistent with the subsequent measurement of the same deferred taxes. For the same reason, the Board concluded that the exception should not apply to investment property initially measured at fair value in a business combination if the entity subsequently uses the cost model.

BC17 Having considered the responses to the exposure draft, the Board decided not to extend the exception to other underlying assets and liabilities that are measured at fair value, including financial instruments or biological assets. This is because the Board understands that the most significant current practice issues relate to investment property. In addition, the Board wished to avoid unintended consequences of expanding the scope to other assets and liabilities that are measured on a fair value basis.

BC18 The Board concluded that the amendments should apply to all temporary differences that arise relating to underlying assets within the scope of the exception, not just those separate temporary differences created by the remeasurement of the underlying asset. This is because the unit of account applied in determining the manner of recovery in the Standard is the underlying asset as a whole, not the individual temporary differences.

Measurement basis

BC19 The Board decided that when the exception applies, there should be a presumption that deferred taxes should be measured to reflect the tax consequences of recovering the carrying amount of the investment property entirely through sale. In making that decision, the Board considered various views expressed by interested parties, which included, but were not limited to the following:

(a) the tax effect would be double-counted in some situations if deferred taxes are measured on the basis of the tax consequences of use, because the investment property is measured at fair value, which reflects some of these tax consequences; and

(b) presuming sale is consistent with a fair value measurement basis that reflects the price that would be received if the investment property is sold.

BC20 Many respondents to the exposure draft said that choosing a measurement basis of fair value is an accounting policy choice that does not imply or predict recovery of the investment property through sale. Many also said that the proposed exception would solve the double-counting problem partially but not completely. The Board noted that the aim of the exception was neither to link the accounting policy with measurement of deferred taxes (see paragraph BC7), nor to remove completely the double-counting of tax effects (see paragraph BC15). The aim of this exception is to provide a practical approach when determination of the expected manner of recovery is difficult and subjective.

BC21 In many cases when an entity chooses the fair value model for investment property, investment properties are recovered through sale. Even if an investment property earns income through rental use in a given period, the value of the future earnings capacity of the investment property will often not decrease and that value will ultimately be realised through sale. Therefore, the Board retained its proposal to introduce a presumption of recovery through sale.

BC22 The Board made that presumption rebuttable because the Board believes that it is not always appropriate to assume the recovery of investment property through sale. The Board initially proposed in the exposure draft that the presumption of recovery through sale is not appropriate when the entity has clear evidence that it will consume the asset's economic benefits throughout its economic life. The Board set a criterion that refers to consumption of the asset's economic benefits, rather than to the recovery of the carrying amount, because the Board understands that there is diverse practice regarding the meaning of the recovery of the carrying amount through use or through sale.

BC23 After considering the responses to the exposure draft, the Board reworded the rebuttable presumption so that clear evidence would not be required to rebut it. Instead, the presumption is rebutted if an asset is held within a business model whose objective is to consume substantially all of the economic benefits embodied in the investment property over time, rather than through sale. Many respondents were concerned that, because clear evidence is an ambiguous term, the requirement to gather clear evidence would have been onerous for entities that have no problem applying the existing principle in IAS 12, and could have led to abuse by entities that choose whether to gather clear evidence to achieve a favourable result. The Board chose to use the term 'business model' because it is already used in IFRS 9 *Financial Instruments* and would not depend on management's intentions for an individual asset. Many respondents were concerned that the presumption would lead to inappropriate results in some cases because it would not be rebutted if a minor scrap value would be recovered through sale. The Board also reworded the rebuttable presumption in order to respond to those concerns. The Board also made it clear that the presumption of recovery through sale cannot be rebutted if the asset is non-depreciable because that fact implies that no part of the carrying amount of the asset would be consumed through use (see paragraph BC6).

BC24 The Board also considered other approaches to the measurement of deferred tax liabilities and deferred tax assets when the exception applies, specifically whether deferred taxes should be measured on the basis of the lower of the tax consequences of recovery through use and through sale. However, the Board rejected such an approach, noting that it would have created:

(a) conceptual and practical concerns about whether deferred tax assets should be measured to reflect the lower of, or higher of, the tax consequences of use and of sale;

(b) a measurement basis that some believe would be arbitrary; and

(c) concerns that entities might be required to measure deferred taxes on a basis that is inconsistent with their expectations of recovery of the carrying amount of the underlying asset.

BC25 Some respondents to the exposure draft drew the mistaken conclusion that the exposure draft required presumption of *immediate* sale at the end of the reporting period when assessing the presumption of recovery through sale. The Board observed that paragraph 47 of IAS 12 requires deferred tax assets and liabilities to be measured at the tax rates that are expected to apply to the period when the asset is realised or the liability is settled on the basis of tax rates (and tax laws) that have been enacted or substantively enacted by the end of the reporting period. This requirement applies even when the presumption of recovery through sale is used. For clarification, the Board adjusted the illustrative example following paragraph 51C to reflect the requirement in paragraph 47.

BC26 In the exposure draft, the Board proposed to withdraw SIC-21. However, many respondents commented that SIC-21 should be retained in order to avoid unintended consequences. Having considered the responses to the exposure draft, the Board decided to incorporate SIC-21 into IAS 12 in its entirety after excluding from the scope of SIC-21 the investment property subject to the requirement in paragraph 51C.

Assessment of deferred tax assets

BC27 The Board inserted paragraph 51E to confirm that the requirements in paragraphs 24–33 (deductible temporary differences) and paragraphs 34–36 (unused tax losses and unused tax credits) relating to assessment of deferred tax assets continue to apply even when the presumption of recovery through sale arises. The Board did not think that additional guidance would be necessary.

Disclosure requirement

BC28 The Board proposed in the exposure draft disclosure of the fact of, and reasons for, the rebuttal of the presumption of recovery through sale if the entity has rebutted the presumption. However, many respondents said that this disclosure would add little or no value to the financial statements. IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* already requires disclosures regarding material judgements. Thus, there is no need to disclose a particular judgement on specific types of assets. The Board was convinced by those arguments and did not proceed with the proposed disclosure requirement.

The costs and benefits of the amendments to IAS 12

BC29 Computation of the tax consequences of selling assets is complex in some tax jurisdictions and there are concerns that the amendments to IAS 12 will increase the administrative burden for some entities in those tax jurisdictions.

BC30 However, the Board believes that the benefit of providing the exception outweighs this potential increase in administrative burden for some entities. This is because the purpose of the exception is to enable preparers to measure deferred taxes in these circumstances in the least subjective manner and in so doing enhance the comparability of financial information about deferred taxes for the benefit of users of financial statements. It is also expected to result in an overall reduction of the administrative burden for entities that have previously had to consider the tax consequence of both use and sale of an investment property when measuring deferred taxes.

BC31 Many respondents to the exposure draft said that entities would not benefit from the amendments in jurisdictions in which this practice issue did not exist but would suffer from an increased administrative burden as a result of the amendments. Their criticism mainly focused on the rebuttable presumption, as discussed in paragraphs BC22 and BC23. They also said that the disclosure requirement proposed in the exposure draft would be onerous.

BC32 After considering the responses to the exposure draft, the Board narrowed the scope of the exception to apply only to investment property carried at fair value. It reworded the rebuttable presumption so that clear evidence would no longer be required to rebut the presumption. The Board also did not pursue the proposed disclosure requirement regarding the fact of, and reason for, the rebuttal. After those changes, the Board believes that the amendments will not be onerous for entities that have previously been able to establish without difficulty how they expect to recover investment property carried at fair value.

Transition and effective date

BC33 IAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors* requires an entity to apply retrospectively a change in accounting policy resulting from the initial application of an IFRS that does not have a transition provision. The Board did not include any transition provision in the amendments because, in the Board's view, it would not be unduly burdensome for entities to apply the changes to IAS 12 retrospectively.

BC34 The Board acknowledges that the amendments may add some administrative burden if they apply to investment property acquired in a business combination that occurred in a previous reporting period. For example, it could be difficult to restate goodwill and recalculate previous impairment reassessments if some information is not available and an entity is unable to separate the effects of hindsight. However, the Board reasoned that the amendments apply only to specific circumstances. Moreover, IAS 8 provides sufficient guidance to deal with cases when it might be impracticable to reassess impairment of goodwill or recoverability of deferred tax assets.

BC35 Consequently, the Board concluded that the cost of requiring retrospective application is outweighed by the benefit of consistent application of the amendments by entities to all periods presented in the financial statements. Accordingly, the Board decided that entities should apply the amendments to IAS 12 retrospectively in accordance with IAS 8.

First-time adoption of IFRSs

BC36 The Board identified no reason to adjust the exception for application by a first-time adopter at its date of transition to IFRSs.

HKAS 34
Revised ~~May 2010~~April 2012

Effective for annual periods
beginning on or after 1 January 2005

Hong Kong Accounting Standard 34

Interim Financial Reporting

Hong Kong Institute of
Certified Public Accountants
香港會計師公會

CONTENTS

Hong Kong Accounting Standard 34 *Interim Financial Reporting* (HKAS 34) is set out in paragraphs 1-4~~8~~9. All the paragraphs have equal authority. HKAS 34 should be read in the context of its objective and the Basis for Conclusions, the *Preface to Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards* and the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting ~~the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements~~*. HKAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors* provides a basis for selecting and applying accounting policies in the absence of explicit guidance.

Introduction

IN1 This Standard (HKAS 34) addresses interim financial reporting. HKAS 34 is effective for accounting periods beginning on or after 1 January 2005.

IN2 An interim financial report is a financial report that contains either a complete or condensed set of financial statements for a period shorter than an entity's full financial year.

IN3 This Standard does not mandate which entities should publish interim financial reports, how frequently, or how soon after the end of an interim period. This Standard applies if a company is required or elects to publish an interim financial report in accordance with Standards.

IN4 This Standard:

(a) defines the minimum content of an interim financial report, including disclosures; and

(b) identifies the accounting recognition and measurement principles that should be applied in an interim financial report.

IN5 The minimum content of an interim financial report is a condensed statement of financial position, a condensed statement of comprehensive income, a condensed statement of cash flows, a condensed statement of changes in equity, and selected explanatory notes. If an entity presents the components of profit or loss in a separate income statement as described in paragraph 81 of HKAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* (as revised in 2007), it presents interim condensed information from that separate statement.

IN6 On the presumption that anyone who reads an entity's interim report will also have access to its most recent annual report, virtually none of the notes to the annual financial statements are repeated or updated in the interim report. Instead, the interim notes include primarily an explanation of the events and changes that are significant to an understanding of the changes in financial position and performance of the entity since the end of the last annual reporting period.

IN7 An entity should apply the same accounting policies in its interim financial report as are applied in its annual financial statements, except for accounting policy changes made after the date of the most recent annual financial statements that are to be reflected in the next annual financial statements. The frequency of an entity's reporting—annual, half-yearly, or quarterly—should not affect the measurement of its annual results. To achieve that objective, measurements for interim reporting purposes are made on a year-to-date basis.

IN8 An appendix to this Standard provides guidance for applying the basic recognition and measurement principles at interim dates to various types of asset, liability, income, and expense. Income tax expense for an interim period is based on an estimated average annual effective income tax rate, consistent with the annual assessment of taxes.

IN9 In deciding how to recognise, classify, or disclose an item for interim financial reporting purposes, materiality is to be assessed in relation to the interim period financial data, not forecast annual data.

Hong Kong Accounting Standard 34
Interim Financial Reporting

Objective

The objective of this Standard is to prescribe the minimum content of an interim financial report and to prescribe the principles for recognition and measurement in complete or condensed financial statements for an interim period. Timely and reliable interim financial reporting improves the ability of investors, creditors, and others to understand an entity's capacity to generate earnings and cash flows and its financial condition and liquidity.

Scope

1 This Standard does not mandate which entities should be required to publish interim financial reports, how frequently, or how soon after the end of an interim period. However, governments, securities regulators, stock exchanges, and accountancy bodies often require entities whose debt or equity securities are publicly traded to publish interim financial reports. This Standard applies if an entity is required or elects to publish an interim financial report in accordance with Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards (HKFRSs). The Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants encourages publicly traded entities to provide interim financial reports that conform to the recognition, measurement, and disclosure principles set out in this Standard. Specifically, publicly traded entities are encouraged:

(a) to provide interim financial reports at least as of the end of the first half of their financial year; and

(b) to make their interim financial reports available not later than 60 days after the end of the interim period.

2 Each financial report, annual or interim, is evaluated on its own for conformity to HKFRSs. The fact that an entity may not have provided interim financial reports during a particular financial year or may have provided interim financial reports that do not comply with this Standard does not prevent the entity's annual financial statements from conforming to HKFRSs if they otherwise do so.

3 If an entity's interim financial report is described as complying with HKFRSs, it must comply with all of the requirements of this Standard. Paragraph 19 requires certain disclosures in that regard.

Definitions

4 The following terms are used in this Standard with the meanings specified:

Interim period **is a financial reporting period shorter than a full financial year.**

Interim financial report **means a financial report containing either a complete set of financial statements (as described in HKAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* (as revised in 2007)) or a set of condensed financial statements (as described in this Standard) for an interim period.**

Content of an interim financial report

5 HKAS 1 (as revised in 2007) defines a complete set of financial statements as including the following components:

(a) a statement of financial position as at the end of the period;

(b) a statement of comprehensive income for the period;

(c) a statement of changes in equity for the period;

(d) a statement of cash flows for the period;

(e) notes, comprising a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information; and

(f) a statement of financial position as at the beginning of the earliest comparative period when an entity applies an accounting policy retrospectively or makes a retrospective restatement of items in its financial statements, or when it reclassifies items in its financial statements.

6 In the interest of timeliness and cost considerations and to avoid repetition of information previously reported, an entity may be required to or may elect to provide less information at interim dates as compared with its annual financial statements. This Standard defines the minimum content of an interim financial report as including condensed financial statements and selected explanatory notes. The interim financial report is intended to provide an update on the latest complete set of annual financial statements. Accordingly, it focuses on new activities, events, and circumstances and does not duplicate information previously reported.

7 Nothing in this Standard is intended to prohibit or discourage an entity from publishing a complete set of financial statements (as described in HKAS 1) in its interim financial report, rather than condensed financial statements and selected explanatory notes. Nor does this Standard prohibit or discourage an entity from including in condensed interim financial statements more than the minimum line items or selected explanatory notes as set out in this Standard. The recognition and measurement guidance in this Standard applies also to complete financial statements for an interim period, and such statements would include all of the disclosures required by this Standard (particularly the selected note disclosures in paragraph 16) as well as those required by other HKFRSs.

Minimum components of an interim financial report

8 **An interim financial report shall include, at a minimum, the following components:**

(a) a condensed statement of financial position;

(b) a condensed statement of comprehensive income, presented as either:

(i) a condensed single statement; or

(ii) a condensed separate income statement and a condensed statement of comprehensive income;

(c) a condensed statement of changes in equity;

(d) a condensed statement of cash flows; and

(e) selected explanatory notes.

8A If an entity presents the components of profit or loss in a separate income statement as described in paragraph 81 of HKAS 1 (as revised in 2007), it presents interim condensed information from that separate statement.

Form and content of interim financial statements

9 If an entity publishes a complete set of financial statements in its interim financial report, the form and content of those statements shall conform to the requirements of HKAS 1 for a complete set of financial statements.

10 If an entity publishes a set of condensed financial statements in its interim financial report, those condensed statements shall include, at a minimum, each of the headings and subtotals that were included in its most recent annual financial statements and the selected explanatory notes as required by this Standard. Additional line items or notes shall be included if their omission would make the condensed interim financial statements misleading.

11 In the statement that presents the components of profit or loss for an interim period, an entity shall present basic and diluted earnings per share for that period when the entity is within the scope of HKAS 33 ***Earnings per Share*****.***

11A If an entity presents the components of profit or loss in a separate income statement as described in paragraph 81 of HKAS 1 (as revised in 2007), it presents basic and diluted earnings per share in that separate statement.

12 HKAS 1 (as revised in 2007) provides guidance on the structure of financial statements. The Implementation Guidance for HKAS 1 illustrates ways in which the statement of financial position, statement of comprehensive income and statement of changes in equity may be presented.

13 [Deleted]

14 An interim financial report is prepared on a consolidated basis if the entity's most recent annual financial statements were consolidated statements. The parent's separate financial statements are not consistent or comparable with the consolidated statements in the most recent annual financial report. If an entity's annual financial report included the parent's separate financial statements in addition to consolidated financial statements, this Standard neither requires nor prohibits the inclusion of the parent's separate statements in the entity's interim financial report.

~~Selected explanatory notes~~Significant events and transactions

15 ~~A user of an entity's interim financial report will also have access to the most recent annual financial report of that entity. It is unnecessary, therefore, for the notes to an interim financial report to provide relatively insignificant updates to the information that was already reported in the notes in the most recent annual report. At an interim date,~~ An entity shall include in its interim financial report an explanation of events and transactions that are significant to an understanding of the changes in financial position and performance of the entity since the end of the last annual reporting period ~~is more useful~~. Information disclosed in relation to those events and transactions shall update the relevant information presented in the most recent annual financial report.

15A A user of an entity's interim financial report will have access to the most recent annual financial report of that entity. Therefore, it is unnecessary for the notes to an interim financial report to provide relatively insignificant updates to the information that was reported in the notes in the most recent annual financial report.

~~17~~15B ~~Examples of the kinds of disclosures that are required by paragraph 16 are set out below. Individual HKFRSs provide guidance regarding disclosures for many of these items:~~ The following is a list of events and transactions for which disclosures would be required if they are significant: the list is not exhaustive.

(a) the write-down of inventories to net realisable value and the reversal of such a write-down;

(b) recognition of a loss from the impairment of financial assets property, plant and equipment, intangible assets, or other assets, and the reversal of such an impairment loss;

(c) the reversal of any provisions for the costs of restructuring;

(d) acquisitions and disposals of items of property, plant and equipment;

(e) commitments for the purchase of property, plant and equipment;

(f) litigation settlements;

(g) corrections of prior period errors;

* This paragraph was amended by *Improvements to HKFRSs* issued in October 2008 to clarify the scope of HKAS 34.

(h) ~~[deleted]~~ changes in the business or economic circumstances that affect the fair value of the entity's financial assets and financial liabilities, whether those assets or liabilities are recognised at fair value or amortised cost;

(i) any loan default or breach of a loan agreement that has not been remedied on or before the end of the reporting period; ~~and~~

(j) related party transactions~~.~~;

(k) transfers between levels of the fair value hierarchy used in measuring the fair value of financial instruments;

(l) changes in the classification of financial assets as a result of a change in the purpose or use of those assets; and

(m) changes in contingent liabilities or contingent assets.

15C Individual HKFRSs provide guidance regarding disclosure requirements for many of the items listed in paragraph 15B. When an event or transaction is significant to an understanding of the changes in an entity's financial position or performance since the last annual reporting period, its interim financial report should provide an explanation of and an update to the relevant information included in the financial statements of the last annual reporting period.

16-18 [Deleted]

Other disclosures

~~16~~16A **In addition to disclosing significant events and transactions in accordance with paragraphs 15–15C, ~~A~~an entity shall include the following information, ~~as a minimum,~~ in the notes to its interim financial statements, ~~if material and~~ if not disclosed elsewhere in the interim financial report. The information shall normally be reported on a financial year-to-date basis. ~~However, the entity shall also disclose any events or transactions that are material necessary to an understanding of the current interim period:~~**

(a) a statement that the same accounting policies and methods of computation are followed in the interim financial statements as compared with the most recent annual financial statements or, if those policies or methods have been changed, a description of the nature and effect of the change.~~;~~

(b) explanatory comments about the seasonality or cyclicality of interim operations.~~;~~

(c) the nature and amount of items affecting assets, liabilities, equity, net income, or cash flows that are unusual because of their nature, size, or incidence.~~;~~

(d) the nature and amount of changes in estimates of amounts reported in prior interim periods of the current financial year or changes in estimates of amounts reported in prior financial years~~, if those changes have a material effect in the current interim period;~~.

(e) ~~issuances~~issues, repurchases, and repayments of debt and equity securities.~~;~~

(f) dividends paid (aggregate or per share) separately for ordinary shares and other shares.~~;~~

(g) the following segment information (disclosure of segment information is required in an entity's interim financial report only if HKFRS 8 *Operating Segments* requires that entity to disclose segment information in its annual financial statements):

(i) revenues from external customers, if included in the measure of segment profit or loss reviewed by the chief operating decision maker or otherwise regularly provided to the chief operating decision maker.~~;~~

(ii) intersegment revenues, if included in the measure of segment profit or loss reviewed by the chief operating decision maker or otherwise regularly provided to the chief operating decision maker.~~;~~

(iii) **a measure of segment profit or loss.~~;~~**

(iv) **total assets for which there has been a material change from the amount disclosed in the last annual financial statements.~~;~~**

(v) **a description of differences from the last annual financial statements in the basis of segmentation or in the basis of measurement of segment profit or loss.~~;~~**

(vi) **a reconciliation of the total of the reportable segments' measures of profit or loss to the entity's profit or loss before tax expense (tax income) and discontinued operations. However, if an entity allocates to reportable segments items such as tax expense (tax income), the entity may reconcile the total of the segments' measures of profit or loss to profit or loss after those items. Material reconciling items shall be separately identified and described in that reconciliation.~~;~~**

(h) **~~material~~ events ~~subsequent to the end of~~** after **the interim period that have not been reflected in the financial statements for the interim period.~~;~~**

(i) **the effect of changes in the composition of the entity during the interim period, including business combinations, obtaining or losing control of subsidiaries and long-term investments, restructurings, and discontinued operations. In the case of business combinations, the entity shall disclose the information required by HKFRS 3** *Business Combinations*.~~; **and**~~

~~(j) **changes in contingent liabilities or contingent assets since the end of the last annual reporting period.**~~

~~18 Other Standards HKFRSs specify disclosures that shall be made in financial statements. In that context, financial statements means complete sets of financial statements of the type normally included in an annual financial report and sometimes included in other reports. Except as required by paragraph 16(i), the disclosures required by those other Standards HKFRSs are not required if an entity's interim financial report includes only condensed financial statements and selected explanatory notes rather than a complete set of financial statements.~~

Disclosure of compliance with HKFRSs

19 **If an entity's interim financial report is in compliance with this Standard, that fact shall be disclosed. An interim financial report shall not be described as complying with HKFRSs unless it complies with all ~~of~~ the requirements of HKFRSs.**

Periods for which interim financial statements are required to be presented

20 **Interim reports shall include interim financial statements (condensed or complete) for periods as follows:**

(a) **statement of financial position as of the end of the current interim period and a comparative statement of financial position as of the end of the immediately preceding financial year~~;~~.**

(b) **statements of comprehensive income for the current interim period and cumulatively for the current financial year to date, with comparative statements of comprehensive income for the comparable interim periods (current and year-to-date) of the immediately preceding financial year. As permitted by HKAS 1 (as revised in 2007), an interim report may present for each period either a single statement of comprehensive income, or a statement displaying components of profit or loss (separate income statement) and a second statement beginning with profit or loss and displaying components of other comprehensive income (statement of comprehensive income).**

(c) **statement of changes in equity cumulatively for the current financial year to date, with a comparative statement for the comparable year-to-date period of the immediately preceding financial year.**

(d) statement of cash flows cumulatively for the current financial year to date, with a comparative statement for the comparable year-to-date period of the immediately preceding financial year.

21 For an entity whose business is highly seasonal, financial information for the twelve months up to the end of the interim period and comparative information for the prior twelve-month period may be useful. Accordingly, entities whose business is highly seasonal are encouraged to consider reporting such information in addition to the information called for in the preceding paragraph.

22 Appendix A illustrates the periods required to be presented by an entity that reports half-yearly and an entity that reports quarterly.

Materiality

23 In deciding how to recognise, measure, classify, or disclose an item for interim financial reporting purposes, materiality shall be assessed in relation to the interim period financial data. In making assessments of materiality, it shall be recognised that interim measurements may rely on estimates to a greater extent than measurements of annual financial data.

24 HKAS 1 and HKAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors* define an item as material if its omission or misstatement could influence the economic decisions of users of the financial statements. HKAS 1 requires separate disclosure of material items, including (for example) discontinued operations, and HKAS 8 requires disclosure of changes in accounting estimates, errors and changes in accounting policies. The two Standards do not contain quantified guidance as to materiality.

25 While judgement is always required in assessing materiality, this Standard bases the recognition and disclosure decision on data for the interim period by itself for reasons of understandability of the interim figures. Thus, for example, unusual items, changes in accounting policies or estimates, and errors are recognised and disclosed on the basis of materiality in relation to interim period data to avoid misleading inferences that might result from non-disclosure. The overriding goal is to ensure that an interim financial report includes all information that is relevant to understanding an entity's financial position and performance during the interim period.

Disclosure in annual financial statements

26 If an estimate of an amount reported in an interim period is changed significantly during the final interim period of the financial year but a separate financial report is not published for that final interim period, the nature and amount of that change in estimate shall be disclosed in a note to the annual financial statements for that financial year.

27 HKAS 8 requires disclosure of the nature and (if practicable) the amount of a change in estimate that either has a material effect in the current period or is expected to have a material effect in subsequent periods. Paragraph 16A(d) of this Standard requires similar disclosure in an interim financial report. Examples include changes in estimate in the final interim period relating to inventory write-downs, restructurings, or impairment losses that were reported in an earlier interim period of the financial year. The disclosure required by the preceding paragraph is consistent with the HKAS 8 requirement and is intended to be narrow in scope—relating only to the change in estimate. An entity is not required to include additional interim period financial information in its annual financial statements.

Recognition and measurement

Same accounting policies as annual

28 An entity shall apply the same accounting policies in its interim financial statements as are applied in its annual financial statements, except for accounting policy changes made after the date of the most recent annual financial statements that are to be reflected in the next annual financial statements. However, the frequency of an entity's reporting (annual, half-yearly, or quarterly) shall not affect the measurement of its annual results. To achieve that objective, measurements for interim reporting purposes shall be made on a year-to-date basis.

29 Requiring that an entity apply the same accounting policies in its interim financial statements as in its annual statements may seem to suggest that interim period measurements are made as if each interim period stands alone as an independent reporting period. However, by providing that the frequency of an entity's reporting shall not affect the measurement of its annual results, paragraph 28 acknowledges that an interim period is a part of a larger financial year. Year-to-date measurements may involve changes in estimates of amounts reported in prior interim periods of the current financial year. But the principles for recognising assets, liabilities, income, and expenses for interim periods are the same as in annual financial statements.

30 To illustrate:

(a) the principles for recognising and measuring losses from inventory write-downs, restructurings, or impairments in an interim period are the same as those that an entity would follow if it prepared only annual financial statements. However, if such items are recognised and measured in one interim period and the estimate changes in a subsequent interim period of that financial year, the original estimate is changed in the subsequent interim period either by accrual of an additional amount of loss or by reversal of the previously recognised amount;

(b) a cost that does not meet the definition of an asset at the end of an interim period is not deferred in the statement of financial position either to await future information as to whether it has met the definition of an asset or to smooth earnings over interim periods within a financial year; and

(c) income tax expense is recognised in each interim period based on the best estimate of the weighted average annual income tax rate expected for the full financial year. Amounts accrued for income tax expense in one interim period may have to be adjusted in a subsequent interim period of that financial year if the estimate of the annual income tax rate changes.

31 Under the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statement*s (the *Framework*),[*] recognition is the 'process of incorporating in the balance sheet or income statement an item that meets the definition of an element and satisfies the criteria for recognition'. The definitions of assets, liabilities, income, and expenses are fundamental to recognition, at the end of both annual and interim financial reporting periods.

32 For assets, the same tests of future economic benefits apply at interim dates and at the end of an entity's financial year. Costs that, by their nature, would not qualify as assets at financial year-end would not qualify at interim dates either. Similarly, a liability at the end of an interim reporting period must represent an existing obligation at that date, just as it must at the end of an annual reporting period.

33 An essential characteristic of income (revenue) and expenses is that the related inflows and outflows of assets and liabilities have already taken place. If those inflows or outflows have taken place, the related revenue and expense are recognised; otherwise they are not recognised. The *Framework* says that 'expenses are recognised in the income statement when a decrease in future economic benefits related to a decrease in an asset or an increase of a liability has arisen that can be measured reliably.... [The] *Framework* does not allow the recognition of items in the balance sheet which do not meet the definition of assets or liabilities.'

34 In measuring the assets, liabilities, income, expenses, and cash flows reported in its financial statements, an entity that reports only annually is able to take into account information that becomes available throughout the financial year. Its measurements are, in effect, on a year-to-date basis.

35 An entity that reports half-yearly uses information available by mid-year or shortly thereafter in making the measurements in its financial statements for the first six-month period and information available by year-end or shortly thereafter for the twelve-month period. The twelve-month measurements will reflect possible changes in estimates of amounts reported for the first six-month period. The amounts reported in the interim financial report for the first six-month period are not retrospectively adjusted. Paragraphs 16A(d) and 26 require, however, that the nature and amount of any significant changes in estimates be disclosed.

[*] In October 2010 the HKICPA replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.

36 An entity that reports more frequently than half-yearly measures income and expenses on a year-to-date basis for each interim period using information available when each set of financial statements is being prepared. Amounts of income and expenses reported in the current interim period will reflect any changes in estimates of amounts reported in prior interim periods of the financial year. The amounts reported in prior interim periods are not retrospectively adjusted. Paragraphs 16A(d) and 26 require, however, that the nature and amount of any significant changes in estimates be disclosed.

Revenues received seasonally, cyclically, or occasionally

37 Revenues that are received seasonally, cyclically, or occasionally within a financial year shall not be anticipated or deferred as of an interim date if anticipation or deferral would not be appropriate at the end of the entity's financial year.

38 Examples include dividend revenue, royalties, and government grants. Additionally, some entities consistently earn more revenues in certain interim periods of a financial year than in other interim periods, for example, seasonal revenues of retailers. Such revenues are recognised when they occur.

Costs incurred unevenly during the financial year

39 Costs that are incurred unevenly during an entity's financial year shall be anticipated or deferred for interim reporting purposes if, and only if, it is also appropriate to anticipate or defer that type of cost at the end of the financial year.

Applying the recognition and measurement principles

40 Appendix B provides examples of applying the general recognition and measurement principles set out in paragraphs 28-39.

Use of estimates

41 The measurement procedures to be followed in an interim financial report shall be designed to ensure that the resulting information is reliable and that all material financial information that is relevant to an understanding of the financial position or performance of the entity is appropriately disclosed. While measurements in both annual and interim financial reports are often based on reasonable estimates, the preparation of interim financial reports generally will require a greater use of estimation methods than annual financial reports.

42 Appendix C provides examples of the use of estimates in interim periods.

Restatement of previously reported interim periods

43 A change in accounting policy, other than one for which the transition is specified by a new HKFRSs, shall be reflected by:

(a) restating the financial statements of prior interim periods of the current financial year and the comparable interim periods of any prior financial years that will be restated in the annual financial statements in accordance with HKAS 8; or

(b) when it is impracticable to determine the cumulative effect at the beginning of the financial year of applying a new accounting policy to all prior periods, adjusting the financial statements of prior interim periods of the current financial year, and comparable interim periods of prior financial years to apply the new accounting policy prospectively from the earliest date practicable.

44 One objective of the preceding principle is to ensure that a single accounting policy is applied to a particular class of transactions throughout an entire financial year. Under HKAS 8, a change in accounting policy is reflected by retrospective application, with restatement of prior period financial data as far back as is practicable. However, if the cumulative amount of the adjustment relating to prior financial years is impracticable to determine, then under HKAS 8 the new policy is applied prospectively from the earliest date practicable. The effect of the principle in paragraph 43 is to require that within the current financial year any change in accounting policy is applied either retrospectively or, if that is not practicable, prospectively, from no later than the beginning of the financial year.

45 To allow accounting changes to be reflected as of an interim date within the financial year would allow two differing accounting policies to be applied to a particular class of transactions within a single financial year. The result would be interim allocation difficulties, obscured operating results, and complicated analysis and understandability of interim period information.

Withdrawal of SSAP 25

45A This Standard supersedes SSAP 25 *Interim Financial Reporting* (revised in 2001).

Effective date

46 This Standard becomes operative for financial statements covering periods beginning on or after 1 January 2005. Earlier application is encouraged.

47 HKAS 1 (as revised in 2007) amended the terminology used throughout HKFRSs. In addition it amended paragraphs 4, 5, 8, 11, 12 and 20, deleted paragraph 13 and added paragraphs 8A and 11A. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009. If an entity applies HKAS 1 (revised 2007) for an earlier period, the amendments shall be applied for that earlier period.

48 HKFRS 3 (as revised in 2008) amended paragraph 16(i). An entity shall apply that amendment for annual periods beginning on or after 1 July 2009. If an entity applies HKFRS 3 (revised 2008) for an earlier period, the amendment shall also be applied for that earlier period.

49 Paragraphs 15, 27, 35 and 36 were amended, paragraphs 15A–15C and 16A were added and paragraphs 16–18 were deleted by *Improvements to HKFRSs* issued in May 2010. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011. Earlier application is permitted. If an entity applies the amendments for an earlier period it shall disclose that fact.

Basis for Conclusions on IAS 34 *Interim Financial Reporting*

This Basis for Conclusions accompanies, but is not part of, IAS 34.

HKAS 34 is based on IAS 34 *Interim Financial Reporting*. In approving HKAS 34, the Council of the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants considered and agreed with the IASB's Basis for Conclusions on IAS 34. Accordingly, there are no significant differences between HKAS 34 and IAS 34. The IASB's Basis for Conclusions is reproduced below. The paragraph numbers of IAS 34 referred to below generally correspond with those in HKAS 34.

BC1 This Basis for Conclusions summarises the International Accounting Standards Board's considerations in amending paragraphs 15–18 of IAS 34 Interim Financial Reporting as part of *Improvements to IFRSs* issued in May 2010. Those changes aim to emphasise the disclosures principles in IAS 34 and to add further guidance to illustrate how to apply these principles.

BC2 IAS 34 was developed by the International Accounting Standards Committee (IASC) in 1998 and did not include a Basis for Conclusions.

Significant events and transactions

BC3 In *Improvements to IFRSs* issued in May 2010, the Board addressed requests for clarification of the disclosures required by IAS 34 when considered against changes in the disclosure requirements of other IFRSs. IAS 34 was issued by the Board's predecessor body, IASC, in 1998. In the light of recent improvements to disclosure requirements, many users of financial statements asked the Board to consider whether particular disclosures required by IFRS 7 *Financial Instruments: Disclosures* for annual financial statements should also be required in interim financial statements. IAS 34 sets out disclosure principles to determine what information should be disclosed in an interim financial report. The Board concluded that amending IAS 34 to place greater emphasis on those principles and the inclusion of additional examples relating to more recent disclosure requirements, ie fair value measurements, would improve interim financial reporting.

BC4 As part of *Improvements to IFRSs* issued in May 2010, the Board deleted paragraph 18 of IAS 34 because it repeats paragraph 10 of IAS 34 and because the Board's intention is to emphasise those disclosures that are required rather than those that are not required.

Appendix A
Illustration of periods required to be presented

This appendix, which accompanies, but is not part of, IAS 34, provides examples to illustrate application of the principle in paragraph 20.

Entity publishes interim financial reports half-yearly

A1 The entity's financial year ends 31 December (calendar year). The entity will present the following financial statements (condensed or complete) in its half-yearly interim financial report as of 30 June 20X1:

Statement of financial position:		
At	30 June 20X1	31 December 20X0
Statement of comprehensive income:		
6 months ending	30 June 20X1	30 June 20X0
Statement of cash flows:		
6 months ending	30 June 20X1	30 June 20X0
Statement of changes in equity:		
6 months ending	30 June 20X1	30 June 20X0

Entity publishes interim financial reports quarterly

A2 The entity's financial year ends 31 December (calendar year). The entity will present the following financial statements (condensed or complete) in its quarterly interim financial report as of 30 June 20X1:

Statement of financial position:		
At	30 June 20X1	31 December 20X0
Statement of comprehensive income:		
6 months ending	30 June 20X1	30 June 20X0
3 months ending	30 June 20X1	30 June 20X0
Statement of cash flow:		
6 months ending	30 June 20X1	30 June 20X0
Statement of changes in equity:		
6 months ending	30 June 20X1	30 June 20X0

Appendix B
Examples of applying the recognition and measurement principles

This appendix, which accompanies, but is not part of, IAS 34, provides examples of applying the general recognition and measurement principles set out in paragraphs 28-39.

Employer payroll taxes and insurance contributions

B1 If employer payroll taxes or contributions to government-sponsored insurance funds are assessed on an annual basis, the employer's related expense is recognised in interim periods using an estimated average annual effective payroll tax or contribution rate, even though a large portion of the payments may be made early in the financial year. A common example is an employer payroll tax or insurance contribution that is imposed up to a certain maximum level of earnings per employee. For higher income employees, the maximum income is reached before the end of the financial year, and the employer makes no further payments through the end of the year.

Major planned periodic maintenance or overhaul

B2 The cost of a planned major periodic maintenance or overhaul or other seasonal expenditure that is expected to occur late in the year is not anticipated for interim reporting purposes unless an event has caused the entity to have a legal or constructive obligation. The mere intention or necessity to incur expenditure related to the future is not sufficient to give rise to an obligation.

Provisions

B3 A provision is recognised when an entity has no realistic alternative but to make a transfer of economic benefits as a result of an event that has created a legal or constructive obligation. The amount of the obligation is adjusted upward or downward, with a corresponding loss or gain recognised in profit or loss, if the entity's best estimate of the amount of the obligation changes.

B4 ~~This~~ The Standard requires that an entity apply the same criteria for recognising and measuring a provision at an interim date as it would at the end of its financial year. The existence or non-existence of an obligation to transfer benefits is not a function of the length of the reporting period. It is a question of fact.

Year-end bonuses

B5 The nature of year-end bonuses varies widely. Some are earned simply by continued employment during a time period. Some bonuses are earned based on a monthly, quarterly, or annual measure of operating result. They may be purely discretionary, contractual, or based on years of historical precedent.

B6 A bonus is anticipated for interim reporting purposes if, and only if, (a) the bonus is a legal obligation or past practice would make the bonus a constructive obligation for which the entity has no realistic alternative but to make the payments, and (b) a reliable estimate of the obligation can be made. IAS 19 *Employee Benefits* provides guidance.

Contingent lease payments

B7 Contingent lease payments can be an example of a legal or constructive obligation that ~~are~~ is recognised as a liability. If a lease provides for contingent payments based on the lessee achieving a certain level of annual sales, an obligation can arise in the interim periods of the financial year before the required annual level of sales has been achieved, if that required level of sales is expected to be achieved and the entity, therefore, has no realistic alternative but to make the future lease payment.

Intangible assets

B8 An entity will apply the definition and recognition criteria for an intangible asset in the same way in an interim period as in an annual period. Costs incurred before the recognition criteria for an intangible asset are met are recognised as an expense. Costs incurred after the specific point in time at which the criteria are met are recognised as part of the cost of an intangible asset. 'Deferring' costs as assets in an interim statement of financial position in the hope that the recognition criteria will be met later in the financial year is not justified.

Pensions

B9 Pension cost for an interim period is calculated on a year-to-date basis by using the actuarially determined pension cost rate at the end of the prior financial year, adjusted for significant market fluctuations since that time and for significant curtailments, settlements, or other significant one-~~time~~ off events.

Vacations, holidays, and other short-term compensated absences

B10 Accumulating compensated absences are those that are carried forward and can be used in future periods if the current period's entitlement is not used in full. IAS 19 *Employee Benefits* requires that an entity measure the expected cost of and obligation for accumulating compensated absences at the amount the entity expects to pay as a result of the unused entitlement that has accumulated at the end of the reporting period. That principle is also applied at the end of interim financial reporting periods. Conversely, an entity recognises no expense or liability for non-accumulating compensated absences at the end of an interim reporting period, just as it recognises none at the end of an annual reporting period.

Other planned but irregularly occurring costs

B11 An entity's budget may include certain costs expected to be incurred irregularly during the financial year, such as charitable contributions and employee training costs. Those costs generally are discretionary even though they are planned and tend to recur from year to year. Recognising an obligation at the end of an interim financial reporting period for such costs that have not yet been incurred generally is not consistent with the definition of a liability.

Measuring interim income tax expense

B12 Interim period income tax expense is accrued using the tax rate that would be applicable to expected total annual earnings, that is, the estimated average annual effective income tax rate applied to the pre-tax income of the interim period.

B13 This is consistent with the basic concept set out in paragraph 28 that the same accounting recognition and measurement principles shall be applied in an interim financial report as are applied in annual financial statements. Income taxes are assessed on an annual basis. Interim period income tax expense is calculated by applying to an interim period's pre-tax income the tax rate that would be applicable to expected total annual earnings, that is, the estimated average annual effective income tax rate. That estimated average annual rate would reflect a blend of the progressive tax rate structure expected to be applicable to the full year's earnings including enacted or substantively enacted changes in the income tax rates scheduled to take effect later in the financial year. IAS 12 *Income Taxes* provides guidance on substantively enacted changes in tax rates. The estimated average annual income tax rate would be re-estimated on a year-to-date basis, consistent with paragraph 28 of ~~this~~ the Standard. Paragraph 16(d) requires disclosure of a significant change in estimate.

B14 To the extent practicable, a separate estimated average annual effective income tax rate is determined for each taxing jurisdiction and applied individually to the interim period pre-tax income of each jurisdiction. Similarly, if different income tax rates apply to different categories of income (such as capital gains or income earned in particular industries), to the extent practicable a separate rate is applied to each individual category of interim period pre-tax income. While that degree of precision is desirable, it may not be achievable in all cases, and a weighted average of rates across jurisdictions or across categories of income is used if it is a reasonable approximation of the effect of using more specific rates.

B15 To illustrate the application of the foregoing principle, an entity reporting quarterly expects to earn 10,000 pre-tax each quarter and operates in a jurisdiction with a tax rate of 20 per cent on the first 20,000 of annual earnings and 30 per cent on all additional earnings. Actual earnings match expectations. The following table shows the amount of income tax expense that is reported in each quarter:

	1st Quarter	2nd Quarter	3rd Quarter	4th Quarter	Annual
Tax expense	2,500	2,500	2,500	2,500	10,000

10,000 of tax is expected to be payable for the full year on 40,000 of pre-tax income.

B16 As another illustration, an entity reports quarterly, earns 15,000 pre-tax profit in the first quarter but expects to incur losses of 5,000 in each of the three remaining quarters (thus having zero income for the year), and operates in a jurisdiction in which its estimated average annual income tax rate is expected to be 20 per cent. The following table shows the amount of income tax expense that is reported in each quarter:

	1st Quarter	2nd Quarter	3rd Quarter	4th Quarter	Annual
Tax expense	3,000	(1,000)	(1,000)	(1,000)	0

Difference in financial reporting year and tax year

B17 If the financial reporting year and the income tax year differ, income tax expense for the interim periods of that financial reporting year is measured using separate weighted average estimated effective tax rates for each of the income tax years applied to the portion of pre-tax income earned in each of those income tax years.

B18 To illustrate, an entity's financial reporting year ends 30 June and it reports quarterly. Its taxable year ends 31 December. For the financial year that begins 1 July, Year 1 and ends 30 June, Year 2, the entity earns $10,000 pre-tax each quarter. The estimated average annual income tax rate is 30 per cent in Year 1 and 40 per cent in Year 2.

	Quarter Ending 30 Sept Year 1	Quarter Ending 31 Dec Year 1	Quarter Ending 31 Mar Year 2	Quarter Ending 30 June Year 2	Year Ending 30 June Year 2
Tax expense	3,000	3,000	4,000	4,000	14,000

Tax credits

B19 Some tax jurisdictions give taxpayers credits against the tax payable based on amounts of capital expenditures, exports, research and development expenditures, or other bases. Anticipated tax benefits of this type for the full year are generally reflected in computing the estimated annual effective income tax rate, because those credits are granted and calculated on an annual basis under most tax laws and regulations. On the other hand, tax benefits that relate to a one-~~time~~ off event are recognised in computing income tax expense in that interim period, in the same way that special tax rates applicable to particular categories of income are not blended into a single effective annual tax rate. Moreover, in some jurisdictions tax benefits or credits, including those related to capital expenditures and levels of exports, while reported on the income tax return, are more similar to a government grant and are recognised in the interim period in which they arise.

Tax loss and tax credit carrybacks and carryforwards

B20 The benefits of a tax loss carryback are reflected in the interim period in which the related tax loss occurs. IAS 12 provides that 'the benefit relating to a tax loss that can be carried back to recover current tax of a previous period shall be recognised as an asset'. A corresponding reduction of tax expense or increase of tax income is also recognised.

B21 IAS 12 provides that 'a deferred asset shall be recognised for the carryforward of unused tax losses and unused tax credits to the extent that it is probable that future taxable profit will be available against which the unused tax losses and unused tax credits can be utilised'. IAS 12 provides criteria for assessing the probability of taxable profit against which the unused tax losses and credits can be utilised. Those criteria are applied at the end of each interim period and, if they are met, the effect of the tax loss carryforward is reflected in the computation of the estimated average annual effective income tax rate.

B22 To illustrate, an entity that reports quarterly has an operating loss carryforward of 10,000 for income tax purposes at the start of the current financial year for which a deferred tax asset has not been recognised. The entity earns 10,000 in the first quarter of the current year and expects to earn 10,000 in each of the three remaining quarters. Excluding the carryforward, the estimated average annual income tax rate is expected to be 40 per cent. Tax expense is as follows:

	1st Quarter	**2nd Quarter**	**3rd Quarter**	**4th Quarter**	**Annual**
Tax expense	3,000	3,000	3,000	3,000	12,000

Contractual or anticipated purchase price changes

B23 Volume rebates or discounts and other contractual changes in the prices of raw materials, labour, or other purchased goods and services are anticipated in interim periods, by both the payer and the recipient, if it is probable that they have been earned or will take effect. Thus, contractual rebates and discounts are anticipated but discretionary rebates and discounts are not anticipated because the resulting asset or liability would not satisfy the conditions in the *Conceptual Framework* that an asset must be a resource controlled by the entity as a result of a past event and that a liability must be a present obligation whose settlement is expected to result in an outflow of resources.

Depreciation and amortisation

B24 Depreciation and amortisation for an interim period is based only on assets owned during that interim period. It does not take into account asset acquisitions or dispositions planned for later in the financial year.

Inventories

B25 Inventories are measured for interim financial reporting by the same principles as at financial year-end. IAS 2 *Inventories* establishes standards for recognising and measuring inventories. Inventories pose particular problems at the end of any financial reporting period because of the need to determine inventory quantities, costs, and net realisable values. Nonetheless, the same measurement principles are applied for interim inventories. To save cost and time, entities often use estimates to measure inventories at interim dates to a greater extent than at annual reporting periods. Following are examples of how to apply the net realisable value test at an interim date and how to treat manufacturing variances at interim dates.

Net realisable value of inventories

B26 The net realisable value of inventories is determined by reference to selling prices and related costs to complete and dispose at interim dates. An entity will reverse a write-down to net realisable value in a subsequent interim period only if it would be appropriate to do so at the end of the financial year.

B27 [Deleted]

Interim period manufacturing cost variances

B28 Price, efficiency, spending, and volume variances of a manufacturing entity are recognised in income at interim reporting dates to the same extent that those variances are recognised in income at financial year end. Deferral of variances that are expected to be absorbed by year-end is not appropriate because it could result in reporting inventory at the interim date at more or less than its portion of the actual cost of manufacture.

Foreign currency translation gains and losses

B29 Foreign currency translation gains and losses are measured for interim financial reporting by the same principles as at financial year end.

B30 IAS 21 *The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates* specifies how to translate the financial statements for foreign operations into the presentation currency, including guidelines for using average or closing foreign exchange rates and guidelines for recognising the resulting adjustments in profit or loss, or in other comprehensive income. Consistently with IAS 21, the actual average and closing rates for the interim period are used. Entities do not anticipate some future changes in foreign exchange rates in the remainder of the current financial year in translating foreign operations at an interim date.

B31 If IAS 21 requires translation adjustments to be recognised as income or expense in the period in which they arise, that principle is applied during each interim period. Entities do not defer some foreign currency translation adjustments at an interim date if the adjustment is expected to reverse before the end of the financial year.

Interim financial reporting in hyperinflationary economies

B32 Interim financial reports in hyperinflationary economies are prepared by the same principles as at financial year-end.

B33 IAS 29 *Financial Reporting in Hyperinflationary Economies* requires that the financial statements of an entity that reports in the currency of a hyperinflationary economy be stated in terms of the measuring unit current at the end of the reporting period, and the gain or loss on the net monetary position is included in net income. Also, comparative financial data reported for prior periods are restated to the current measuring unit.

B34 Entities follow those same principles at interim dates, thereby presenting all interim data in the measuring unit as of the end of the interim period, with the resulting gain or loss on the net monetary position included in the interim period's net income. Entities do not annualise the recognition of the gain or loss. Nor do they use an estimated annual inflation rate in preparing an interim financial report in a hyperinflationary economy.

Impairment of assets

B35 IAS 36 *Impairment of Assets* requires that an impairment loss be recognised if the recoverable amount has declined below carrying amount.

B36 This Standard requires that an entity apply the same impairment testing, recognition, and reversal criteria at an interim date as it would at the end of its financial year. That does not mean, however, that an entity must necessarily make a detailed impairment calculation at the end of each interim period. Rather, an entity will review for indications of significant impairment since the end of the most recent financial year to determine whether such a calculation is needed.

Appendix C
Examples of the use of estimates

This Appendix, which accompanies, but is not part of, IAS 34, provides examples to illustrate application of the principle in paragraph 41.

C1 **Inventories**: Full stock-taking and valuation procedures may not be required for inventories at interim dates, although it may be done at financial year-end. It may be sufficient to make estimates at interim dates based on sales margins.

C2 **Classifications of current and non-current assets and liabilities:** Entities may do a more thorough investigation for classifying assets and liabilities as current or non-current at annual reporting dates than at interim dates.

C3 **Provisions:** Determination of the appropriate amount of a provision (such as a provision for warranties, environmental costs, and site restoration costs) may be complex and often costly and time-consuming. Entities sometimes engage outside experts to assist in the annual calculations. Making similar estimates at interim dates often entails updating of the prior annual provision rather than the engaging of outside experts to do a new calculation.

C4 **Pensions**: IAS 19 *Employee Benefits* requires that an entity determine the present value of defined benefit obligations and the market value of plan assets at the end of each reporting period and encourages an entity to involve a professionally qualified actuary in measurement of the obligations. For interim reporting purposes, reliable measurement is often obtainable by extrapolation of the latest actuarial valuation.

C5 **Income taxes:** Entities may calculate income tax expense and deferred income tax liability at annual dates by applying the tax rate for each individual jurisdiction to measures of income for each jurisdiction. Paragraph B14 ~~of Appendix B~~ acknowledges that while that degree of precision is desirable at interim reporting dates as well, it may not be achievable in all cases, and a weighted average of rates across jurisdictions or across categories of income is used if it is a reasonable approximation of the effect of using more specific rates.

C6 **Contingencies:** The measurement of contingencies may involve the opinions of legal experts or other advisers. Formal reports from independent experts are sometimes obtained with respect to contingencies. Such opinions about litigation, claims, assessments, and other contingencies and uncertainties may or may not also be needed at interim dates.

C7 **Revaluations and fair value accounting**: IAS 16 *Property, Plant and Equipment* allows an entity to choose as its accounting policy the revaluation model whereby items of property, plant and equipment are revalued to fair value. Similarly, IAS 40 *Investment Property* requires an entity to determine the fair value of investment property. For those measurements, an entity may rely on professionally qualified valuers at annual reporting dates though not at interim reporting dates.

C8 **Intercompany reconciliations:** Some intercompany balances that are reconciled on a detailed level in preparing consolidated financial statements at financial year-end might be reconciled at a less detailed level in preparing consolidated financial statements at an interim date.

C9 **Specialised industries:** Because of complexity, costliness, and time, interim period measurements in specialised industries might be less precise than at financial year-end. An example would be calculation of insurance reserves by insurance companies.

Appendix D
Comparison with International Accounting Standards

This comparison appendix, which was prepared as at October 2004 and deals only with significant differences in the standards extant, is produced for information only and does not form part of the standards in HKAS 34.

The International Accounting Standard comparable with HKAS 34 is IAS 34 *Interim Financial Reporting*.

There are no major textual differences between HKAS 34 and IAS 34.

HK(IFRIC)-Int 13
Revised ~~May 2010~~April 2012

Effective for annual periods beginning on or after 1 July 2008

HK (IFRIC) Interpretation 13

Customer Loyalty Programmes

Hong Kong Institute of
Certified Public Accountants
香港會計師公會

Effective date and transition

10 An entity shall apply this Interpretation for annual periods beginning on or after 1 July 2008. Earlier application is permitted. If an entity applies the Interpretation for a period beginning before 1 July 2008, it shall disclose that fact.

10A Paragraph AG2 was amended by *Improvements to HKFRSs* issued in May 2010. An entity shall apply that amendment for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011. Earlier application is permitted. If an entity applies the amendment for an earlier period it shall disclose that fact.

11 Changes in accounting policy shall be accounted for in accordance with HKAS 8.

Appendix—Application guidance

This appendix is an integral part of the Interpretation.

Measuring the fair value of award credits

AG1 Paragraph 6 of the conclusions requires the consideration allocated to award credits to be measured by reference to their fair value, ie the amount for which the award credits could be sold separately. If the fair value is not directly observable, it must be estimated.

AG2 An entity may estimate the fair value of award credits by reference to the fair value of the awards for which they could be redeemed. The fair value of ~~these awards would be reduced to take~~ the award credits takes into account, as appropriate:

(a) the amount of the discounts or incentives ~~fair value of awards~~ that would otherwise be offered to customers who have not earned award credits from an initial sale; and

(b) the proportion of award credits that are not expected to be redeemed by customers.

If customers can choose from a range of different awards, the fair value of the award credits will reflect the fair values of the range of available awards, weighted in proportion to the frequency with which each award is expected to be selected.

AG3 In some circumstances, other estimation techniques may be available. For example, if a third party will supply the awards and the entity pays the third party for each award credit it grants, it could estimate the fair value of the award credits by reference to the amount it pays the third party, adding a reasonable profit margin. Judgement is required to select and apply the estimation technique that satisfies the requirements of paragraph 6 of the conclusions and is most appropriate in the circumstances.

Illustrative examples

These examples accompany, but are not part of, HK(IFRIC)-Int 13.

Example 1—Awards supplied by the entity

IE1 A grocery retailer operates a customer loyalty programme. It grants programme members loyalty points when they spend a specified amount on groceries. Programme members can redeem the points for further groceries. The points have no expiry date. In one period, the entity grants 100 points. Management estimates the fair value of groceries for which each loyalty point can be redeemed as 1.25 currency units (CU1.25). This amount takes into account an estimate of the discount that management expects would otherwise be offered to customers who have not earned award credits from an initial sale. In addition, m~~M~~anagement expects only 80 of these points to be redeemed. Therefore, the fair value of each point is CU1, being the value of each loyalty point granted of CU1.25 reduced to take into account points not expected to be redeemed ((80 points/100 points) × CU1.25 = CU1). Accordingly, m~~M~~anagement ~~estimates the fair value of each loyalty point to be one currency unit (CU1), and~~ defers recognition of revenue of CU100.

Year 1

IE2 At the end of the first year, 40 of the points have been redeemed in exchange for groceries, ie half of those expected to be redeemed. The entity recognises revenue of (40 points / 80[*] points) × CU100 = CU50.

Year 2

IE3 In the second year, management revises its expectations. It now expects 90 points to be redeemed altogether.

IE4 During the second year, 41 points are redeemed, bringing the total number redeemed to 40[†] + 41 = 81 points. The cumulative revenue that the entity recognises is (81 points / 90[&] points) × CU100 = CU90. The entity has recognised revenue of CU50 in the first year, so it recognises CU40 in the second year.

Year 3

IE5 In the third year, a further nine points are redeemed, taking the total number of points redeemed to 81 + 9 = 90. Management continues to expect that only 90 points will ever be redeemed, ie that no more points will be redeemed after the third year. So the cumulative revenue to date is (90 points / 90[φ] points) × CU100 = CU100. The entity has already recognised CU90 of revenue (CU50 in the first year and CU40 in the second year). So it recognises the remaining CU10 in the third year. All of the revenue initially deferred has now been recognised.

Example 2—Awards supplied by a third party

IE6 A retailer of electrical goods participates in a customer loyalty programme operated by an airline. It grants programme members one air travel point with each CU1 they spend on electrical goods. Programme members can redeem the points for air travel with the airline, subject to availability. The retailer pays the airline CU0.009 for each point.

IE7 In one period, the retailer sells electrical goods for consideration totaling CU1 million. It grants 1 million points.

[*] total number of points expected to be redeemed
[†] number of points redeemed in year 1
[&] revised estimate of total number of points expected to be redeemed
[φ] total number of points still expected to be redeemed.

The IFRIC noted that IAS 18 does not specify which of these methods should be applied, or in what circumstances. The IFRIC decided that the Interpretation should not be more prescriptive than IAS 18. The selection of one or other method is therefore left to management's judgement.

Measuring the fair value of award credits

BC14A In *Improvements to IFRSs* issued in May 2010, the Board addressed unclear wording that could lead to divergent interpretations of the term 'fair value' in the application guidance for IFRIC 13. The Board was made aware that paragraph AG2 could be interpreted to mean that the fair value of award credits is equal to the fair value of redemption awards because the term 'fair value' is used to refer to both the value of the award credits and the value of the awards for which the credits could be redeemed. To address this, the Board amended paragraph AG2 and Example 1 in the illustrative examples. The amendment clarifies that when the fair value of award credits is measured on the basis of the value of the awards for which they could be redeemed, the fair value of the award credits should take account of expected forfeitures as well as the discounts or incentives that would otherwise be offered to customers who have not earned award credits from an initial sale.

Revenue recognition—awards supplied by the entity

BC15 The consideration allocated to award credits represents the amount that the entity has received for accepting an obligation to supply awards if customers redeem the credits. This amount reflects both the value of the awards and the entity's expectations regarding the proportion of credits that will be redeemed, ie the risk of a claim being made. The entity has received the consideration for accepting the risk, whether or not a claim is actually made. Hence, the Interpretation requires revenue to be recognised as the risk expires, ie based on the number of award credits that have been redeemed relative to the total number expected to be redeemed.

BC16 After granting award credits, the entity may revise its expectations about the proportion that will be redeemed. The change in expectations does not affect the consideration that the entity has received for supplying awards: this consideration (the revenue) was fixed at the time of the initial sale. Hence the change in expectations does not affect the measurement of the original obligation. Instead, it affects the amount of revenue recognised in respect of award credits that are redeemed in the period. The change in expectations is thus accounted for as a change in estimate in the period of change and future periods, in accordance with paragraph 36 of IAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*.

BC17 A change in expectations regarding redemption rates may also affect the costs the entity expects to incur to supply awards. If estimated redemption rates increase to the extent that the unavoidable costs of supplying awards are expected to exceed the consideration received and receivable for them, the entity has onerous contracts. The Interpretation therefore highlights the requirement of IAS 37 to recognise a liability for the excess.

Revenue recognition—awards supplied by a third party

BC18 Some customer loyalty programmes offer customers awards in the form of goods and services supplied by a third party. For example, a grocery retailer may offer customers an option to redeem award credits for air travel points or a voucher for free goods from an electrical retailer. The IFRIC noted that, depending on the terms of the arrangement, the reporting entity (the grocery retailer in this example) may retain few, if any, obligations in respect of the supply of the awards. In such circumstances, the customer is still receiving the benefits of—and implicitly paying the entity consideration for—the rights to awards. Hence, consideration should be allocated to the award credits.

BC19 However, the entity may in substance be collecting the consideration on behalf of the third party, ie as an agent for the third party. If so, paragraph 8 of IAS 18 would need to be taken into consideration. This paragraph states that:

> Revenue includes only the gross inflows of economic benefits received and receivable by the entity on its own account … in an agency relationship, the gross inflows of economic benefits include amounts collected on behalf of the principal and which do not result in increases in equity for the entity. The amounts collected on behalf of the principal are not revenue. Instead, revenue is the amount of commission.

BC20 Depending on the terms of the agreement between the entity, award credit holders and the third party, the gross consideration attributable to the award credits might not represent revenue for the entity. Rather, the entity's revenue might be only the net amount it retains on its own account, ie the difference between the consideration allocated to the award credits and the amount paid or payable by the entity to the third party for supplying the awards.

BC21 The IFRIC noted that, if the entity is acting as an agent for a third party, its revenue arises from rendering agency services to that third party, not from supplying awards to the award credit holders. The entity should therefore recognise revenue in accordance with paragraph 20 of IAS 18. As the outcome of the transaction can be estimated reliably (the consideration has been received and the amount payable to the third party agreed), revenue is recognised in the periods in which the entity renders its agency services, ie when the third party becomes obliged to supply the awards and entitled to receive consideration for doing so.

Changes from draft Interpretation D20

BC22 A draft of the Interpretation—D20 *Customer Loyalty Programmes*—was published for comment in September 2006. The most significant changes made in the light of comments received relate to:

(a) *allocation of consideration to award credits.* D20 proposed that consideration should be allocated between award credits and other components of the sale by reference to their relative fair values. The IFRIC accepted suggestions that another allocation method—whereby the award credits are allocated an amount equal to their fair value—could also be consistent with IAS 18, and would be simpler to apply. So, as explained in paragraph BC14, the consensus has been revised to avoid precluding this latter method.

(b) *awards supplied by a third party.* The consensus in D20 did not refer to the possibility that an entity may have collected consideration on behalf of the third party, and hence that its revenue may need to be measured net of amounts passed on to the third party. However, as some commentators pointed out, awards are often supplied by third parties and so this possibility will often need to be considered for transactions within the scope of the Interpretation. The requirements of IAS 18 in this respect have therefore been added to paragraph 8 of the consensus and are explained in paragraphs BC19–BC21.

(c) *customer relationship intangible assets.* Customer loyalty programmes may create or enhance customer relationship intangible assets. The consensus in D20 had pointed out that such assets should be recognised only if the recognition criteria in IAS 38 *Intangible Assets* had been met. The IFRIC accepted that this comment appeared to suggest that there would be circumstances in which intangible assets were recognised, whereas the requirements of IAS 38 were such that recognition was very unlikely. It also decided that the comment was peripheral to the issues being addressed in the Interpretation. It deleted the comment from the consensus.

(d) *guidance on measuring the fair value of award credits.* Paragraph AG2 explains that the fair value of award credits may be measured by reference to the fair value of the awards for which they could be redeemed, reduced to take into account various factors. The list of factors in D20 had referred to the time value of money. However, the IFRIC accepted suggestions that the effect of the time value of money will often not be material—especially if awards are specified in non-monetary terms—and that it should not therefore be highlighted as a factor that will routinely need to be measured.

(e) *location of application guidance.* Two paragraphs of the consensus in D20 comprised guidance on how to apply the paragraphs that preceded them. They have been moved to an appendix, and supplemented by additional explanation that had been located in the Basis for Conclusions in D20.

(f) *illustrative examples.* These have been added to help readers understand how to apply the revenue recognition requirements, especially in relation to forfeited award credits and changes in estimates of forfeiture rates.

HK(IFRIC)-Int 14
Revised ~~December 2009~~April 2012

Effective for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2008

HK (IFRIC) Interpretation 14

HKAS 19—The Limit on a Defined Benefit Asset, Minimum Funding Requirements and their Interaction

Hong Kong Institute of
Certified Public Accountants
香港會計師公會

COPYRIGHT

CONTENTS

paragraphs

HONG KONG (IFRIC) INTERPRETATION 14
HKAS 19—THE LIMIT ON A DEFINED BENEFIT ASSET, MINIMUM FUNDING REQUIREMENTS AND THEIR INTERACTION

Hong Kong (IFRIC) Interpretation 14 *HKAS 19—The Limit on a Defined Benefit Asset, Minimum Funding Requirements and their Interaction* (HK(IFRIC)-Int 14) is set out in paragraphs 1–2~~8~~9. HK(IFRIC)-Int 14 is accompanied by illustrative examples and a Basis for Conclusions. The scope and authority of Interpretations are set out in the *Preface to Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards*.

Hong Kong (IFRIC) Interpretation 14
HKAS 19—The Limit on a Defined Benefit Asset, Minimum Funding Requirements and their Interaction

References

- HKAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*
- HKAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*
- HKAS 19 *Employee Benefits*
- HKAS 37 *Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets*

Background

1 Paragraph 58 of HKAS 19 limits the measurement of a defined benefit asset to "the present value of economic benefits available in the form of refunds from the plan or reductions in future contributions to the plan" plus unrecognised gains and losses. Questions have arisen about when refunds or reductions in future contributions should be regarded as available, particularly when a minimum funding requirement exists.

2 Minimum funding requirements exist in many countries to improve the security of the post-employment benefit promise made to members of an employee benefit plan. Such requirements normally stipulate a minimum amount or level of contributions that must be made to a plan over a given period. Therefore, a minimum funding requirement may limit the ability of the entity to reduce future contributions.

3 Further, the limit on the measurement of a defined benefit asset may cause a minimum funding requirement to be onerous. Normally, a requirement to make contributions to a plan would not affect the measurement of the defined benefit asset or liability. This is because the contributions, once paid, will become plan assets and so the additional net liability is nil. However, a minimum funding requirement may give rise to a liability if the required contributions will not be available to the entity once they have been paid.

3A In December 2009 the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants amended HK(IFRIC)-Int 14 to remove an unintended consequence arising from the treatment of prepayments of future contributions in some circumstances when there is a minimum funding requirement.

Scope

4 This Interpretation applies to all post-employment defined benefits and other long-term employee defined benefits.

5 For the purpose of this Interpretation, minimum funding requirements are any requirements to fund a post-employment or other long-term defined benefit plan.

Issues

6 The issues addressed in this Interpretation are:

(a) when refunds or reductions in future contributions should be regarded as available in accordance with paragraph 58 of HKAS 19.

(b) how a minimum funding requirement might affect the availability of reductions in future contributions.

(c) when a minimum funding requirement might give rise to a liability.

Conclusions

Availability of a refund or reduction in future contributions

7 An entity shall determine the availability of a refund or a reduction in future contributions in accordance with the terms and conditions of the plan and any statutory requirements in the jurisdiction of the plan.

8 An economic benefit, in the form of a refund or a reduction in future contributions, is available if the entity can realise it at some point during the life of the plan or when the plan liabilities are settled. In particular, such an economic benefit may be available even if it is not realisable immediately at the end of the reporting period.

9 The economic benefit available does not depend on how the entity intends to use the surplus. An entity shall determine the maximum economic benefit that is available from refunds, reductions in future contributions or a combination of both. An entity shall not recognise economic benefits from a combination of refunds and reductions in future contributions based on assumptions that are mutually exclusive.

10 In accordance with HKAS 1, the entity shall disclose information about the key sources of estimation uncertainty at the end of the reporting period that have a significant risk of causing a material adjustment to the carrying amount of the net asset or liability recognised in the statement of financial position. This might include disclosure of any restrictions on the current realisability of the surplus or disclosure of the basis used to determine the amount of the economic benefit available.

The economic benefit available as a refund

The right to a refund

11 A refund is available to an entity only if the entity has an unconditional right to a refund:

(a) during the life of the plan, without assuming that the plan liabilities must be settled in order to obtain the refund (eg in some jurisdictions, the entity may have a right to a refund during the life of the plan, irrespective of whether the plan liabilities are settled); or

(b) assuming the gradual settlement of the plan liabilities over time until all members have left the plan; or

(c) assuming the full settlement of the plan liabilities in a single event (ie as a plan wind-up).

An unconditional right to a refund can exist whatever the funding level of a plan at the end of the reporting period.

12 If the entity's right to a refund of a surplus depends on the occurrence or non-occurrence of one or more uncertain future events not wholly within its control, the entity does not have an unconditional right and shall not recognise an asset.

Measurement of the economic benefit

13 An entity shall measure the economic benefit available as a refund as the amount of the surplus at the end of the reporting period (being the fair value of the plan assets less the present value of the defined benefit obligation) that the entity has a right to receive as a refund, less any associated costs. For instance, if a refund would be subject to a tax other than income tax, an entity shall measure the amount of the refund net of the tax.

14 In measuring the amount of a refund available when the plan is wound up (paragraph 11(c)), an entity shall include the costs to the plan of settling the plan liabilities and making the refund. For example, an entity shall deduct professional fees if these are paid by the plan rather than the entity, and the costs of any insurance premiums that may be required to secure the liability on wind-up.

15 If the amount of a refund is determined as the full amount or a proportion of the surplus, rather than a fixed amount, an entity shall make no adjustment for the time value of money, even if the refund is realisable only at a future date.

~~*The economic benefit available as a contribution reduction*~~

The economic benefit available as a contribution reduction

16 If there is no minimum funding requirement for contributions relating to future service, ~~an entity shall determine~~ the economic benefit available as a reduction in future contributions is~~as the lower of~~

~~(a) the surplus in the plan and~~

~~(b)~~ ~~the present value of~~ the future service cost to the entity~~, ie excluding any part of the future cost that will be borne by employees,~~ for each period ~~year~~ over the shorter of the expected life of the plan and the expected life of the entity. The future service cost to the entity excludes amounts that will be borne by employees.

17 An entity shall determine the future service costs using assumptions consistent with those used to determine the defined benefit obligation and with the situation that exists at the end of the reporting period as determined by HKAS 19. Therefore, an entity shall assume no change to the benefits to be provided by a plan in the future until the plan is amended and shall assume a stable workforce in the future unless the entity is demonstrably committed at the end of the reporting period to make a reduction in the number of employees covered by the plan. In the latter case, the assumption about the future workforce shall include the reduction.~~ An entity shall determine the present value of the future service cost using the same discount rate as that used in the calculation of the defined benefit obligation at the end of the reporting period.~~

The effect of a minimum funding requirement on the economic benefit available as a reduction in future contributions

18 An entity shall analyse any minimum funding requirement at a given date into contributions that are required to cover (a) any existing shortfall for past service on the minimum funding basis and (b) ~~the future accrual of benefits~~future service.

19 Contributions to cover any existing shortfall on the minimum funding basis in respect of services already received do not affect future contributions for future service. They may give rise to a liability in accordance with paragraphs 23–26.

20 If there is a minimum funding requirement for contributions relating to ~~the~~ future ~~accrual of benefits~~ service, ~~an entity shall determine~~ the economic benefit available as a reduction in future contributions ~~as the present value~~ is the sum of:

(a) any amount that reduces future minimum funding requirement contributions for future service because the entity made a prepayment (ie paid the amount before being required to do so); and

(b) the estimated future service cost in each ~~year~~ period in accordance with paragraphs 16 and 17, less ~~(b)~~ the estimated minimum funding requirement contributions that would be required ~~in respect of the future accrual of benefits~~ for future service in ~~that year~~ those periods if there were no prepayment as described in (a).

21 An entity shall ~~calculate~~ estimate the future minimum funding requirement contributions for ~~required in respect of the~~ future ~~accrual of benefits~~ service taking into account the effect of any existing surplus determined using ~~on~~ the minimum funding ~~requirement~~ basis but excluding the prepayment described in paragraph 20(a). An entity shall use ~~the~~ assumptions ~~required by~~ consistent with the minimum funding ~~requirement~~ basis and, for any factors not specified by that basis~~the minimum funding requirement~~, assumptions consistent with those used to determine the defined benefit obligation and with the situation that exists at the end of the reporting period as determined by HKAS 19. The ~~calculation~~ estimate shall include any changes expected as a result of the entity paying the minimum contributions when they are due. However, the estimate ~~calculation~~ shall not include the effect of expected changes in the terms and conditions of the minimum funding basis ~~requirement~~ that are not substantively enacted or contractually agreed at the end of the reporting period.

22 When an entity determines the amount described in paragraph 20(b), ~~I~~if the future minimum funding requirement contributions for future service ~~required in respect of the future accrual of benefits~~ exceed~~s~~ the future HKAS 19 service cost in any given ~~year~~period, ~~the present value of~~ that excess reduces the amount of the economic benefit ~~asset~~ available as a reduction in future contributions~~ at the end of the reporting period~~. However, the amount ~~of the asset available as a reduction in future contributions~~ described in paragraph 20(b) can never be less than zero.

When a minimum funding requirement may give rise to a liability

23 If an entity has an obligation under a minimum funding requirement to pay contributions to cover an existing shortfall on the minimum funding basis in respect of services already received, the entity shall determine whether the contributions payable will be available as a refund or reduction in future contributions after they are paid into the plan.

24 To the extent that the contributions payable will not be available after they are paid into the plan, the entity shall recognise a liability when the obligation arises. The liability shall reduce the defined benefit asset or increase the defined benefit liability so that no gain or loss is expected to result from applying paragraph 58 of HKAS 19 when the contributions are paid.

25 An entity shall apply paragraph 58A of HKAS 19 before determining the liability in accordance with paragraph 24.

26 The liability in respect of the minimum funding requirement and any subsequent remeasurement of that liability shall be recognised immediately in accordance with the entity's adopted policy for recognising the effect of the limit in paragraph 58 in HKAS 19 on the measurement of the defined benefit asset. In particular:

(a) an entity that recognises the effect of the limit in paragraph 58 in profit or loss, in accordance with paragraph 61(g) of HKAS 19, shall recognise the adjustment immediately in profit or loss.

(b) an entity that recognises the effect of the limit in paragraph 58 in other comprehensive income, in accordance with paragraph 93C of HKAS 19, shall recognise the adjustment immediately in other comprehensive income.

Effective date

27 An entity shall apply this Interpretation for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2008. Earlier application is permitted.

27A HKAS 1 (as revised in 2007) amended the terminology used throughout HKFRSs. In addition it amended paragraph 26. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009. If an entity applies HKAS 1 (revised 2007) for an earlier period, the amendments shall be applied for that earlier period.

27B *Prepayments of a Minimum Funding Requirement* added paragraph 3A and amended paragraphs 16–18 and 20–22. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011. Earlier application is permitted. If an entity applies the amendments for an earlier period, it shall disclose that fact.

Transition

28 An entity shall apply this Interpretation from the beginning of the first period presented in the first financial statements to which the Interpretation applies. An entity shall recognise any initial adjustment arising from the application of this Interpretation in retained earnings at the beginning of that period.

29 An entity shall apply the amendments in paragraphs 3A, 16–18 and 20–22 from the beginning of the earliest comparative period presented in the first financial statements in which the entity applies this Interpretation. If the entity had previously applied this Interpretation before it applies the amendments, it shall recognise the adjustment resulting from the application of the amendments in retained earnings at the beginning of the earliest comparative period presented.

Illustrative examples

These examples accompany, but are not part of, IFRIC 14.

Example 1—Effect of the minimum funding requirement when there is an IAS 19 surplus and the minimum funding contributions payable are fully refundable to the entity

IE1 An entity has a funding level on the minimum funding requirement basis (which is measured on a different basis from that required under IAS 19) of 82 per cent in Plan A. Under the minimum funding requirements, the entity is required to increase the funding level to 95 per cent immediately. As a result, the entity has a statutory obligation at the end of the reporting period to contribute 200 to Plan A immediately. The plan rules permit a full refund of any surplus to the entity at the end of the life of the plan. The year-end valuations for Plan A are set out below.

Market value of assets	1,200
Present value of defined benefit obligation under IAS 19	(1,100)
Surplus	100
Defined benefit asset (before consideration of the minimum funding requirement)[(a)]	100

(a) For simplicity, it is assumed that there are no unrecognised amounts.

Application of requirements

IE2 Paragraph 24 of IFRIC 14 requires the entity to recognise a liability to the extent that the contributions payable are not fully available. Payment of the contributions of 200 will increase the IAS 19 surplus from 100 to 300. Under the rules of the plan this amount will be fully refundable to the entity with no associated costs. Therefore, no liability is recognised for the obligation to pay the contributions.

Example 2—Effect of a minimum funding requirement when there is an IAS 19 deficit and the minimum funding contributions payable would not be fully available

IE3 An entity has a funding level on the minimum funding requirement basis (which is measured on a different basis from that required under IAS 19) of 77 per cent in Plan B. Under the minimum funding requirements, the entity is required to increase the funding level to 100 per cent immediately. As a result, the entity has a statutory obligation at the end of the reporting period to pay additional contributions of 300 to Plan B. The plan rules permit a maximum refund of 60 per cent of the IAS 19 surplus to the entity and the entity is not permitted to reduce its contributions below a specified level which happens to equal the IAS 19 service cost. The year-end valuations for Plan B are set out below.

Market value of assets	1,000
Present value of defined benefit obligation under IAS 19	(1,100)
Deficit	(100)
Defined benefit (liability) (before consideration of the minimum funding requirement)[(a)]	(100)

(a) For simplicity, it is assumed that there are no unrecognised amounts

Application of requirements

IE4 The payment of 300 would change the IAS 19 deficit of 100 to a surplus of 200. Of this 200, 60 per cent (120) is refundable.

IE5 Therefore, of the contributions of 300, 100 eliminates the IAS 19 deficit and 120 (60 per cent of 200) is available as an economic benefit. The remaining 80 (40 per cent of 200) of the contributions paid is not available to the entity.

IE6 Paragraph 24 of IFRIC 14 requires the entity to recognise a liability to the extent that the additional contributions payable are not available to it.

IE7 Therefore, the entity increases the defined benefit liability by 80. As required by paragraph 26 of IFRIC 14, 80 is recognised immediately in accordance with the entity's adopted policy for recognising the effect of the limit in paragraph 58 and the entity recognises a net liability of 180 in the statement of financial position. No other liability is recognised in respect of the statutory obligation to pay contributions of 300.

Summary

Market value of assets	1,000
Present value of defined benefit obligation under IAS 19	(1,100)
Deficit	(100)
Defined benefit liability (before consideration of the minimum funding requirement)[(a)]	(100)
Adjustment in respect of minimum funding requirement	(80)
Net liability recognised in the statement of financial position	(180)

(a) For simplicity, it is assumed that there are no unrecognised amounts.

IE8 When the contributions of 300 are paid, the net asset recognised in the statement of financial position will be 120.

Example 3—Effect of a minimum funding requirement when the contributions payable would not be fully available and the effect on the economic benefit available as a future contribution reduction

IE9 An entity has a funding level on the minimum funding ~~requirement~~ basis (which ~~is measured~~ it measures on a different basis from that required ~~under~~ by IAS 19) of 95 per cent in Plan C. ~~Under t~~The minimum funding requirements~~,~~ require the entity ~~is required~~ to pay contributions to increase the funding level to 100 per cent over the next three years. The contributions are required to make good the deficit on the minimum funding ~~requirement~~ basis (shortfall) and to cover future service~~the accrual of benefits in each year on the minimum funding basis~~.

IE10 Plan C also has an IAS 19 surplus at the end of the reporting period of 50, which cannot be refunded to the entity under any circumstances. There are no unrecognised amounts.

IE11 The nominal amounts of contributions required to satisfy the minimum funding ~~contribution~~ requirements in respect of the shortfall and the future ~~IAS 19~~ service ~~cost~~ for the next three years are set out below.

Year	Total contributions for minimum funding ~~contribution~~ requirement	~~Minimum~~ ~~c~~Contributions required to make good the shortfall	~~Minimum~~ ~~c~~Contributions required to cover future ~~accrual~~service
1	135	120	15
2	125	112	13
3	115	104	11

Application of requirements

IE12 The entity's present obligation in respect of services already received includes the contributions required to make good the shortfall but does not include the ~~minimum~~ contributions required to cover future ~~accrual~~service.

IE13 The present value of the entity's obligation, assuming a discount rate of 6 per cent per year, is approximately 300, calculated as follows:

$[120/(1.06) + 112/(1.06)^2 + 104/(1.06)^3]$.

IE14 When these contributions are paid into the plan, the present value of the IAS 19 surplus (ie the fair value of assets less the present value of the defined benefit obligation) would, other things being equal, increase from 50 to 350 (300 + 50).

IE15 However, the surplus is not refundable although an asset may be available as a future contribution reduction.

IE16 In accordance with paragraph 20 of IFRIC 14, the economic benefit available as a reduction in future contributions is the sum ~~present value~~ of:

(a) any amount that reduces future minimum funding requirement contributions for future service because the entity made a prepayment (ie paid the amount before being required to do so); and

(~~a~~b) the estimated future service cost in each period in accordance with paragraphs 16 and 17~~year to the entity~~, less

~~(b)~~ ~~any~~ the estimated minimum funding requirement contributions that would be required for ~~requirements in respect of the~~ future service in those periods if there were no prepayment as described in (a)~~accrual of benefits in that year over the expected life of the plan~~.

IE17 In this example there is no prepayment as described in paragraph 20(a). The amounts available as a reduction in future contributions ~~reduction~~ when applying paragraph 20(b) are set out below.

Year	IAS 19 service cost	Minimum contributions required to cover future ~~accrual~~service	Amount available as contribution reduction
1	13	15	(2)
2	13	13	0
3	13	11	2
4+	13	9	4

IE18 Assuming a discount rate of 6 per cent, the present value of the economic benefit available as a future contribution reduction is therefore equal to:

$(2)/(1.06) + 0/(1.06)^2 + 2/(1.06)^3 + 4/(1.06)^4 \ldots. = 56.$

Thus in accordance with paragraph 58(b) of IAS 19, the present value of the economic benefit ~~The asset~~ available from future contribution reductions is ~~accordingly~~ limited to 56.

IE19 Paragraph 24 of IFRIC 14 requires the entity to recognise a liability to the extent that the additional contributions payable will not be fully available. Therefore, the entity reduces the defined benefit asset by 294 (50 + 300–56).

IE20 As required by paragraph 26 of IFRIC 14, the 294 is recognised immediately in accordance with the entity's adopted policy for recognising the effect of the limit in paragraph 58 and the entity recognises a net liability of 244 in the statement of financial position. No other liability is recognised in respect of the obligation to make contributions to fund the minimum funding shortfall.

Summary

Surplus	50
Defined benefit asset (before consideration of the minimum funding requirement)	50
Adjustment in respect of minimum funding requirement	(294)
Net liability recognised in the statement of financial position[(a)]	(244)

(a) For simplicity, it is assumed that there are no unrecognised amounts.

IE21 When the contributions of 300 are paid into the plan, the net asset recognised in the statement of financial position will become 56 (300–244).

Example 4—Effect of a prepayment when a minimum funding requirement exceeds the expected future service charge

IE22 An entity is required to fund Plan D so that no deficit arises on the minimum funding basis. The entity is required to pay minimum funding requirement contributions to cover the service cost in each period determined on the minimum funding basis.

IE23 Plan D has an IAS 19 surplus of 35 at the beginning of 20X1. There are no cumulative unrecognised net actuarial losses and past service costs. This example assumes that the discount rate and expected return on assets are 0 per cent, and that the plan cannot refund the surplus to the entity under any circumstances but can use the surplus for reductions of future contributions.

IE24 The minimum contributions required to cover future service are 15 for each of the next five years. The expected IAS 19 service cost is 10 in each year.

IE25 The entity makes a prepayment of 30 at the beginning of 20X1 in respect of years 20X1 and 20X2, increasing its surplus at the beginning of 20X1 to 65. That prepayment reduces the future contributions it expects to make in the following two years, as follows:

Year	IAS 19 service cost	Minimum funding requirement contribution before prepayment	Minimum funding requirement contribution after prepayment
20X1	10	15	0
20X2	10	15	0
20X3	10	15	15
20X4	10	15	15
20X5	10	15	15
Total	50	75	45

Application of requirements

IE26 In accordance with paragraphs 20 and 22 of IFRIC 14, at the beginning of 20X1, the economic benefit available as a reduction in future contributions is the sum of:

(a) 30, being the prepayment of the minimum funding requirement contributions; and

(b) nil. The estimated minimum funding requirement contributions required for future service would be 75 if there was no prepayment. Those contributions exceed the estimated future service cost (50); therefore the entity cannot use any part of the surplus of 35 noted in paragraph IE23 (see paragraph 22).

IE27 Assuming a discount rate of 0 per cent, the present value of the economic benefit available as a reduction in future contributions is equal to 30. Thus in accordance with paragraph 58 of IAS 19 the entity recognises an asset of 30 (because this is lower than the IAS 19 surplus of 65).

Basis for Conclusions on IFRIC Interpretation 14 *IAS 19 – The Limited on a Defined Benefit Asset Minimum Funding Requirements and their Interaction*

This Basis for Conclusions accompanies, but is not part of, IFRIC 14.

HK(IFRIC)-Int 14 is based on IFRIC Interpretation 14 *HKAS 19—The Limit on a Defined Benefit Asset, Minimum Funding Requirements and their Interaction*. In approving HK(IFRIC)-Int 14, the Council of the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants considered and agreed with the IFRIC's Basis for Conclusions on IFRIC Interpretation 14. Accordingly, there are no significant differences between HK(IFRIC)-Int 14 and IFRIC Interpretation 14. The IFRIC's Basis for Conclusions is reproduced below. The paragraph numbers of IFRIC Interpretation 14 referred to below generally correspond with those in HK(IFRIC)-Int 14.

BC1 This Basis for Conclusions summarises the IFRIC's considerations in reaching its consensus. Individual IFRIC members gave greater weight to some factors than to others.

BC2 The IFRIC noted that practice varies significantly with regard to the treatment of the effect of a minimum funding requirement on the limit placed by paragraph 58 of IAS 19 *Employee Benefits* on the amount of a defined benefit asset. The IFRIC therefore decided to include this issue on its agenda. In considering the issue, the IFRIC also became aware of the need for general guidance on determining the limit on the measurement of the defined benefit asset, and for guidance on when that limit makes a minimum funding requirement onerous.

BC3 The IFRIC published D19 *IAS 19—The Asset Ceiling: Availability of Economic Benefits and Minimum Funding Requirements* in August 2006. In response, the IFRIC received 48 comment letters.

BC3A In November 2009 the International Accounting Standards Board amended IFRIC 14 to remove an unintended consequence arising from the treatment of prepayments in some circumstances when there is a minimum funding requirement (see paragraphs BC30A–BC30D).

Definition of a minimum funding requirement

BC4 D19 referred to statutory or contractual minimum funding requirements. Respondents to D19 asked for further guidance on what constituted a minimum funding requirement. The IFRIC decided to clarify that for the purpose of the Interpretation a minimum funding requirement is any requirement for the entity to make contributions to *fund* a post-employment or other long-term defined benefit plan.

Interaction between IAS 19 and minimum funding requirements

BC5 Funding requirements would not normally affect the accounting for a plan under IAS 19. However, paragraph 58 of IAS 19 limits the amount of the defined benefit asset to the available economic benefit plus unrecognised amounts. The interaction of a minimum funding requirement and this limit has two possible effects:

(a) the minimum funding requirement may restrict the economic benefits available as a reduction in future contributions, and

(b) the limit may make the minimum funding requirement onerous because contributions payable under the requirement in respect of services already received may not be available once they have been paid, either as a refund or as a reduction in future contributions.

BC6 These effects raised general questions about the availability of economic benefits in the form of a refund or a reduction in future contributions.

Availability of the economic benefit

BC7 One view of "available" would limit the economic benefit to the amount that is realisable immediately at the end of the reporting period.

BC8 The IFRIC disagreed with this view. The *Framework** defines an asset as a resource "from which future economic benefits are expected to flow to the entity." Therefore, it is not necessary for the economic benefit to be realisable immediately. Indeed, a reduction in future contributions cannot be realisable immediately.

BC9 The IFRIC concluded that a refund or reduction in future contributions is available if it could be realisable at some point during the life of the plan or when the plan liability is settled. Respondents to D19 were largely supportive of this conclusion.

BC10 In the responses to D19, some argued that an entity may expect to use the surplus to give improved benefits. Others noted that future actuarial losses might reduce or eliminate the surplus. In either case there would be no refund or reduction in future contributions. The IFRIC noted that the existence of an asset at the end of the reporting period depends on whether the entity has the right to obtain a refund or reduction in future contributions. The existence of the asset at that date is not affected by possible future changes to the amount of the surplus. If future events occur that change the amount of the surplus, their effects are recognised when they occur. Accordingly, if the entity decides to improve benefits, or future losses in the plan reduce the surplus, the consequences are recognised when the decision is made or the losses occur. The IFRIC noted that such events of future periods do not affect the existence or measurement of the asset at the end of the reporting period.

The asset available as a refund of a surplus

BC11 The IFRIC noted that a refund of a surplus could potentially be obtained in three ways:

(a) during the life of the plan, without assuming that the plan liabilities have to be settled in order to get the refund (eg in some jurisdictions, the entity may have a right to a refund during the life of the plan, irrespective of whether the plan liabilities are settled); or

(b) assuming the gradual settlement of the plan liabilities over time until all members have left the plan; or

(c) assuming the full settlement of the plan liabilities in a single event (ie as a plan wind-up).

BC12 The IFRIC concluded that all three ways should be considered in determining whether an economic benefit was available to the entity. Some respondents to D19 raised the question of when an entity controls an asset that arises from the availability of a refund, in particular if a refund would be available only if a third party (for example the plan trustees) gave its approval. The IFRIC concluded that an entity controlled the asset only if the entity has an unconditional right to the refund. If that right depends on actions by a third party, the entity does not have an unconditional right.

* The reference to the *Framework* is to IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB in 2001. In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.

BC13 If the plan liability is settled by an immediate wind-up, the costs associated with the wind-up may be significant. One reason for this may be that the cost of annuities available on the market is expected to be significantly higher than that implied by the IAS 19 basis. Other costs include the legal and other professional fees expected to be incurred during the winding-up process. Accordingly, a plan with an apparent surplus may not be able to recover any of that surplus on wind-up.

BC14 The IFRIC noted that the available surplus should be measured at the amount that the entity could receive from the plan. The IFRIC decided that in determining the amount of the refund available on wind-up of the plan, the amount of the costs associated with the settlement and refund should be deducted if paid by the plan.

BC15 The IFRIC noted that the costs of settling the plan liability would be dependent on the facts and circumstances of the plan and it decided not to issue any specific guidance in this respect.

BC16 The IFRIC also noted that the present value of the defined benefit obligation and the fair value of assets are both measured on a present value basis and therefore take into account the timing of the future cash flows. The IFRIC concluded that no further adjustment for the time value of money needs to be made when measuring the amount of a refund determined as the full amount or a proportion of the surplus that is realisable at a future date.

The asset available in the form of a future contribution reduction

BC17 The IFRIC decided that the amount of the contribution reduction available to the entity should be measured with reference to the amount that the entity would have been required to pay had there been no surplus. The IFRIC concluded that is represented by the cost to the entity of accruing benefits in the plan, in other words by the future IAS 19 service cost. Respondents to D19 broadly supported this conclusion.

BC18 When the issue of the availability of reductions in future contributions was first raised with the IFRIC, some expressed the view that an entity should recognise an asset only to the extent that there was a formal agreement between the trustees and the entity specifying contributions payable lower than the IAS 19 service cost. The IFRIC disagreed, concluding instead that an entity is entitled to assume that, in general, it will not be required to make contributions to a plan in order to maintain a surplus and hence that it will be able to reduce contributions if the plan has a surplus. (The effects of a minimum funding requirement on this assumption are discussed below.)

BC19 The IFRIC considered the assumptions that underlie the calculation of the future service cost. In respect of the discount rate, IAS 19 requires the measurement of the present value of the future contribution reduction to be based on the same discount rate as that used to determine the present value of the defined benefit obligation.

BC20 The IFRIC considered whether the term over which the contribution reduction should be calculated should be restricted to the expected future working lifetime of the active membership. The IFRIC disagreed with that view. The IFRIC noted that the entity could derive economic benefit from a reduction in contributions beyond that period. The IFRIC also noted that increasing the term of the calculation has a decreasing effect on the incremental changes to the asset because the reductions in contributions are discounted to a present value. Thus, for plans with a large surplus and no possibility of receiving a refund, the available asset will be limited even if the term of the calculation extends beyond the expected future working lifetime of the active membership to the expected life of the plan. This is consistent with paragraph BC77 of the Basis for Conclusions on IAS 19, which states that "the limit [on the measurement of the defined benefit asset] is likely to come into play *only* where … the plan is very mature and has a very large surplus that is more than large enough to eliminate *all* future contributions and cannot be returned to the entity" (emphasis added). If the contribution reduction were determined by considering only the term of the expected future working lifetime of the active membership, the limit on the measurement of the defined benefit asset would come into play much more frequently.

BC21 Most respondents to D19 were supportive of this view. However, some argued that the term should be the shorter of the expected life of the plan and the expected life of the entity. The IFRIC agreed that the entity could not derive economic benefits from a reduction in contributions beyond its own expected life and has amended the Interpretation accordingly.

BC22 Next, the IFRIC considered what assumptions should be made about a future workforce. D19 proposed that the assumptions for the demographic profile of the future workforce should be consistent with the assumptions underlying the calculation of the present value of the defined benefit obligation at the end of the reporting period. Some respondents noted that the calculation of service costs for future periods requires assumptions that are not required for the calculation of the defined benefit obligation. In particular, the assumptions underlying the present value of the defined benefit obligation calculation do not include an explicit assumption for new entrants.

BC23 The IFRIC agreed that this is the case. The IFRIC noted that assumptions are needed in respect of the size of the future workforce and future benefits provided by the plan. The IFRIC decided that the future service cost should be based on the situation that exists at the end of the reporting period determined in accordance with IAS 19. Therefore, increases in the size of the workforce or the benefits provided by the plan should not be anticipated. Decreases in the size of the workforce or the benefits should be included in the assumptions for the future service cost at the same time as they are treated as curtailments in accordance with IAS 19.

The effect of a minimum funding requirement on the economic benefit available as a refund

BC24 The IFRIC considered whether a minimum funding requirement to make contributions to a plan in force at the end of the reporting period would restrict the extent to which a refund of surplus is available. The IFRIC noted that there is an implicit assumption in IAS 19 that the specified assumptions represent the best estimate of the eventual outcome of the plan in economic terms, while a requirement to make additional contributions is often a prudent approach designed to build in a risk margin for adverse circumstances. Moreover, when there are no members left in the plan, the minimum funding requirement would have no effect. This would leave the IAS 19 surplus available. To the extent that the entity has a right to this eventual surplus, the IAS 19 surplus would be available to the entity, regardless of the minimum funding restrictions in force at the end of the reporting period. The IFRIC therefore concluded that the existence of a minimum funding requirement may affect the timing of a refund but does not affect whether it is ultimately available to the entity.

The effect of a minimum funding requirement on the economic benefit available as a reduction in future contributions

BC25 The entity's minimum funding requirements at a given date can be analysed into the contributions that are required to cover (a) an existing shortfall for past service on the minimum funding basis and (b) ~~the~~ future service~~accrual of benefits~~.

BC26 Contributions required to cover an existing shortfall may give rise to a liability, as discussed in paragraphs BC31–BC37 below. But they do not affect the availability of a reduction in future contributions for future service.

BC27 In contrast, future contribution requirements in respect of future service do not generate an additional liability at the end of the reporting period because they do not relate to past services received by the entity. However, they may reduce the extent to which the entity can benefit from a reduction in future contributions. Therefore, the IFRIC decided that the available asset from a contribution reduction should be calculated as the present value of the IAS 19 future service cost less the minimum funding contribution requirement in respect of future service in each year.

BC28 If the minimum funding contribution requirement is consistently greater than the IAS 19 future service cost, that calculation may be thought to imply that a liability exists. However, as noted above, an entity has no liability at the end of the reporting period in respect of minimum funding requirements that relate to future service. The economic benefit available from a reduction in future contributions can be nil, but it can never be a negative amount.

BC29 The respondents to D19 were largely supportive of these conclusions.

BC30 The IFRIC noted that future changes to regulations on minimum funding requirements might affect the available surplus. However, the IFRIC decided that, just as the future service cost was determined on the basis of the situation existing at the end of the reporting period , so should the effect of a minimum funding requirement. The IFRIC concluded that when determining the amount of an asset that might be available as a reduction in future contributions, an entity should not consider whether the minimum funding requirement might change in the future. The respondents to D19 were largely supportive of these conclusions.

Prepayments of a minimum funding requirement

BC30A If an entity has prepaid future minimum funding requirement contributions and that prepayment will reduce future contributions, the prepayment generates economic benefits for the entity. However, to the extent that the future minimum funding requirement contributions exceeded future service costs, the original version of IFRIC 14 did not permit entities to consider those economic benefits in measuring a defined benefit asset. After issuing IFRIC 14, the Board reviewed the treatment of such prepayments. The Board concluded that such a prepayment provides an economic benefit to the entity by relieving the entity of an obligation to pay future minimum funding requirement contributions that exceed future service cost. Therefore, considering those economic benefits in measuring a defined benefit asset would convey more useful information to users of financial statements. In May 2009 the Board published that conclusion in an exposure draft *Prepayments of a Minimum Funding Requirement*. After considering the responses to that exposure draft, the Board amended IFRIC 14 by issuing *Prepayments of a Minimum Funding Requirement* in November 2009.

BC30B Some respondents noted that the amendments increase the effect of funding considerations on the measurement of a defined benefit asset and liability and questioned whether funding considerations should ever affect the measurement. However, the Board noted that the sole purpose of the amendments was to eliminate an unintended consequence in IFRIC 14. Thus, the Board did not re-debate the fundamental conclusion of IFRIC 14 that funding is relevant to the measurement when an entity cannot recover the additional cost of a minimum funding requirement in excess of the IAS 19 service cost.

BC30C Many respondents noted that the proposals made the assessment of the economic benefit available from a prepayment different from the assessment for a surplus arising from actuarial gains. Most agreed that a prepayment created an asset, but questioned why the Board did not extend the underlying principle to other surpluses that could be used to reduce future payments of minimum funding requirement contributions.

BC30D The Board did not extend the scope of the amendments to surpluses arising from actuarial gains because such an approach would need further thought and the Board did not want to delay the amendments for prepayments. However, the Board may consider the matter further in a future comprehensive review of pension cost accounting.

Onerous minimum funding requirements

BC31 Minimum funding requirements for contributions to cover an existing minimum funding shortfall create an obligation for the entity at the end of the reporting period because they relate to past service. Nonetheless, usually minimum funding requirements do not affect the measurement of the defined benefit asset or liability under IAS 19. This is because the contributions, once paid, become plan assets and the additional net liability for the funding requirement is nil. However, the IFRIC noted that the limit on the measurement of the defined benefit asset in paragraph 58 of IAS 19 may make the funding obligation onerous, as follows.

BC32 If an entity is obliged to make contributions and some or all of those contributions will not subsequently be available as an economic benefit, it follows that when the contributions are made the entity will not be able to recognise an asset to that extent. However, the resulting loss to the entity does not arise on the payment of the contributions but earlier, at the point at which the obligation to pay arises.

BC33 Therefore, the IFRIC concluded that when an entity has an obligation under a minimum funding requirement to make additional contributions to a plan in respect of services already received, the entity should reduce the asset or increase the liability recognised in the statement of financial position to the extent that the minimum funding contributions payable to the plan will not be available to the entity either as a refund or a reduction in future contributions.

BC34 Respondents to D19 broadly supported this conclusion. But some questioned whether the draft Interpretation extended the application of paragraph 58 of IAS 19 too far. They argued that it should apply only when an entity has a defined benefit asset. In particular, it should not be used to classify a funding requirement as onerous, thereby creating an additional liability to be recognised beyond that arising from the other requirements of IAS 19. Others agreed that such a liability existed, but questioned whether it fell within the scope of IAS 19 rather than IAS 37 *Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets*.

BC35 The IFRIC did not agree that the Interpretation extends the application of paragraph 58 of IAS 19. Rather, it applies the principles in IAS 37 relating to onerous contracts in the context of the requirements of IAS 19, including paragraph 58. On the question whether the liability falls within the scope of IAS 19 or IAS 37, the IFRIC noted that employee benefits are excluded from the scope of IAS 37. The IFRIC therefore confirmed that the interaction of a minimum funding requirement and the limit on the measurement of the defined benefit asset could result in a decrease in a defined benefit asset or an increase in a defined benefit liability.

BC36 The IFRIC also discussed whether the liability in respect of the minimum funding requirement and the effect of any subsequent remeasurement should be recognised immediately in profit or loss or whether they should be eligible for the options for deferred recognition or recognition outside profit or loss that IAS 19 specifies for actuarial gains and losses. The IFRIC noted that the liability in respect of any minimum funding requirements arises only because of the limit on the measurement of the asset recognised in the statement of financial position under paragraph 58 of IAS 19. Furthermore, all consequences of paragraph 58 should be treated consistently.

BC37 Therefore, the IFRIC concluded that any liability in respect of a minimum funding requirement and the effect of any subsequent remeasurement should be recognised immediately in accordance with paragraph 61(g) or 93C of IAS 19. This is consistent with the recognition of other adjustments to the net asset or liability recognised in the statement of financial position under paragraph 58 of IAS 19. The respondents to D19 broadly agreed with this requirement.

Transitional provisions

BC38 In D19, the IFRIC proposed that the draft Interpretation should be applied retrospectively. The draft Interpretation required immediate recognition of all adjustments relating to the minimum funding requirements. The IFRIC therefore argued that retrospective application would be straightforward.

BC39 Respondents to D19 noted that paragraph 58A of IAS 19 causes the limit on the defined benefit asset to affect the deferred recognition of actuarial gains and losses. Retrospective application of the Interpretation could change the amount of that limit for previous periods, thereby also changing the deferred recognition of actuarial gains and losses. Calculating these revised amounts retrospectively over the life of the plan would be costly and of little benefit to users of financial statements.

BC40 The IFRIC agreed with this view. The IFRIC therefore amended the transitional provisions so that IFRIC 14 is to be applied only from the beginning of the first period presented in the financial statements for annual periods beginning on or after the effective date.

Summary of changes from D19

BC41 The Interpretation has been altered in the following significant respects since it was exposed for comment as D19:

(a) The issue of when an entity controls an asset arising from the availability of a refund has been clarified (paragraphs BC10 and BC12);

(b) Requirements relating to the assumptions underlying the measurement of a reduction in future contributions have been clarified (paragraphs BC22 and BC23); and

(c) The transitional requirements have been changed from retrospective application to application from the beginning of the first period presented in the first financial statements to which the Interpretation applies (paragraphs BC38–BC40).

(d) In November 2009 the Board amended IFRIC 14 to require entities to recognise as an economic benefit any prepayment of minimum funding requirement contributions. At the same time, the Board removed references to 'present value' from paragraphs 16, 17, 20 and 22 and 'the surplus in the plan' from paragraph 16 because these references duplicated references in paragraph 58 of IAS 19. The Board also amended the term 'future accrual of benefits' to 'future service' for consistency with the rest of IAS 19.